



DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY  
HEADQUARTERS UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS  
3000 MARINE CORPS PENTAGON  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20350-3000

NAVMC DIR 3500.108  
C469  
17 Jul 06

NAVMC DIRECTIVE 3500.108

From: Commandant of the Marine Corps  
To: Distribution List

Subj: MOUNTAIN COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL,  
(SHORT TITLE: MCWO T&R MANUAL)

Ref: (a) MCO P3500.72A  
(b) MCO 1553.3A  
(c) MCRP 3-0A  
(d) MCO 1553.2A  
(e) MCRP 3-0B  
(f) MCO 3400.3F  
(g) MCO 1553.1B  
(h) MCO P1553.4A

Encl: (1) LOCATOR SHEET

1. Purpose. Per reference (a), this T&R Manual establishes training standards, regulations, and practices regarding the training of Marines who require special skill training for employment in a mountainous or cold weather environment.

2. Information

a. The training events in this Directive will be used to standardize unit mountain/cold weather training throughout the operating forces, focus on Mission Essential Tasks (METs) for the unit operating in a mountain/cold weather environment, and establish a framework for assessment of unit and individual training readiness in those environments. It includes unit and individual training standards to be used by unit commanders and formal schools for the development of training plans, curricula, and records of training accomplished in order to establish a framework for identifying training achievements, training gaps, and objective assessments of readiness associated with the training of Marines.

b. CG TECOM will update this T&R Manual as necessary to provide current and relevant training standards to commanders. Commanders will incorporate these training events into their training plans to the extent that the events support their unit's METs and time and other resources are available.

c. All questions pertaining to the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program and Unit Training Management should be directed to: CG, TECOM (C 469), 1019 Elliot Road, Quantico, VA 22134.

DISTRIBUTION STATEMENT A: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

JUL 17 2006

3. Scope

a. Commanders will review, update, and submit unit Mission Essential Task Lists (METLs) per references (b) and (c).

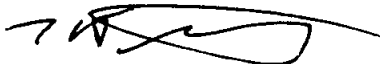
b. Per reference (b), commanders shall conduct an internal assessment of the unit's ability to execute each MET and prepare a definitive plan of attack to achieve MET proficiency by developing long-, mid-, and short-range training plans to achieve proficiency in each MET.

c. Using this T&R Manual and other pertinent references, commanders will conduct evaluations (informal and formal) of their unit's ability to accomplish their METs. These training evaluations will be conducted at appropriate points in the unit's training cycle to determine MET proficiency and adjust training priorities.

d. Formal school directors and commanders will establish or review programs of instruction per reference (d) to ensure compliance with core individual training requirements as set forth in this Directive.

4. Command. This Directive is applicable to the Marine Corps Total Force.

5. Certification. Reviewed and approved this date.



K. J. STALDER  
By direction

DISTRIBUTION: PCN 10303372900

Copy to: 7000260 (2)  
8145001 (1)

NAVMC DIR 3500.108  
17 Jul 06

LOCATOR SHEET

Subj: MOUNTAIN COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL,  
(SHORT TITLE: MCWO T&R MANUAL)

Location: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Indicate location(s) of copy(ies) of this Directive.)

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCWO T&R MANUAL

RECORD OF CHANGES

Log completed change action as indicated.

| Change<br>Number | Date of<br>Change | Date<br>Entered | Signature of Person<br>Incorporated Change |
|------------------|-------------------|-----------------|--|
|                  |                   |                 |  |
|                  |                   |                 |  |
|                  |                   |                 |  |
|                  |                   |                 |  |
|                  |                   |                 |  |
|                  |                   |                 |  |
|                  |                   |                 |  |
|                  |                   |                 |  |
|                  |                   |                 |  |

MCWO T&R MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 . . . . . | OVERVIEW                       |
| 2 . . . . . | MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX |
| 3 . . . . . | COLLECTIVE EVENTS              |
| 4 . . . . . | INDIVIDUAL EVENTS              |

APPENDICES

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| A . . . . . | FUNCTIONAL AREA MATRIX             |
| B . . . . . | TERMS AND DEFINITIONS              |
| C . . . . . | SPECIALIZED GLOSARY                |
| D . . . . . | CLIMBING CLASSIFICATION AND GRADES |

MCWO T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 1

OVERVIEW

|   | <u>PARAGRAPH</u> | <u>PAGE</u> |
|---|------------------|-------------|
| INTRODUCTION. . . . .                                 | 1000             | 1-2         |
| CORNERSTONE ORDERS. . . . .                           | 1001             | 1-2         |
| ORGANIZATION. . . . .                                 | 1002             | 1-2         |
| T&R EVENT CODING. . . . .                             | 1003             | 1-3         |
| T&R EVENT DETAIL. . . . .                             | 1004             | 1-4         |
| UNIT TRAINING . . . . .                               | 1005             | 1-6         |
| REQUIREMENTS FOR COLLECTIVE TRAINING. . . . .         | 1006             | 1-7         |
| NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, CHEMICAL (NBC) TRAINING. . . . . | 1007             | 1-7         |
| NIGHT TRAINING. . . . .                               | 1008             | 1-8         |
| APPLICATION OF SIMULATION . . . . .                   | 1009             | 1-8         |
| UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT. . . . .                     | 1010             | 1-8         |
| TRAINING EVALUATION . . . . .                         | 1011             | 1-9         |
| OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM) . . . . .           | 1012             | 1-9         |
| CAREER PROFESSIONAL READING . . . . .                 | 1013             | 1-10        |
| CONCLUSION. . . . .                                   | 1014             | 1-10        |

## MCWO T&R MANUAL

### CHAPTER 1

#### OVERVIEW

#### 1000. INTRODUCTION

1. The Training and Readiness (T&R) Program is intended to become the Corps' primary tool for planning, conducting, evaluating training, and for assessing training readiness. The operating forces and supporting establishments have developed Mission Essential Task Lists (METLs) for ground communities using Marine Corps doctrine, Table of Organization (T/O) missions, Operational Plans, Contingency Plans, and Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTP). T&R Manuals are built around these service-level METLs; all events contained in T&R Manuals relate directly back to this METL. The comprehensive T&R Program ensures the Marine Corps continue to improve its combat readiness by training more efficiently and effectively. Ultimately, this will enhance the Marine Corps' ability to accomplish all assigned missions.

2. The T&R Manual is a single document that seeks to capture the collective and individual training requirements to prepare units to accomplish their combat mission. The MCWO T&R Manual is not intended to be an encyclopedia that contains every minute detail of how to conduct training. Instead, it seeks to provide a framework, linked to a myriad of references, in order to provide a baseline to design, conduct, and assess training that prepares Marines to perform the mission. This manual is a fundamental tool for supervisors and commanders to build and maintain unit combat readiness. Using this tool, commanders can construct and execute an effective training plan that supports the unit's METL. More detailed information on the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program may be found in reference (a).

3. The MCWO T&R Manual is designed for use by Marine Corps Mountain Warfare Training Center (MCMWTC) curriculum developers to create courses of instruction and unit commanders to determine predeployment training requirements in preparation for training at MCMWTC. This directive focuses on individual and collective tasks performed by OPFOR units and supervised by MCMWTC personnel in the performance of unit Mission Essential Tasks (METs).

**1001. CORNERSTONE ORDERS.** Guidance for training and evaluation in the Marine Corps, from entry-level training at the formal schools to advanced PME for senior enlisted and officers, is found in the cornerstone orders. All training and evaluation programs throughout the Marine Corps were designed using the guidance provided in these orders. The cornerstone orders are references (b), (d), (g), and (h).

#### 1002. ORGANIZATION

1. This directive is written to support the mountain cold weather training for operating force units. This directive is not intended to be a stand-alone document. The MCMWTC staff will use this directive in conjunction with

the references for each individual and collective event to train units to accomplish unit METs in these unique environments.

2. This directive is comprised of four chapters and two appendices. Chapter 2 contains the battalion's METs for mountain cold weather operations and the collective events associated with those METs. Chapters 3 and 4 are the collective and individual events. Appendix A is an outline of functional codes used for individual and collective training events. Appendix B is a glossary of terms and definitions commonly used in the Training and Readiness Program. Appendix C is a Specialized Glossary that applies to terms and acronyms associated with mountain cold weather operations. Appendix D details climbing classifications and grades for trained climbers.

3. Collective and individual training standards (Chapters 3 and 4) in this T&R Manual will contain at a minimum, the following elements:

- a. Event Code and Title
- b. Evaluation Code
- c. Sustainment Interval
- d. Event Description
- e. Event Condition
- f. Event Standard
- g. References
- h. Rank

As this directive evolves over time, additional event components may be added. Further discussion of event components is found in paragraph 1004 of this chapter.

**1003. T&R EVENT CODING.** T&R events are coded for ease of reference. Each event consists of a three-field designator; each field has up to 4 characters. The first field represents the Community (MW for units, and MWI for Mountain Warfare Instructors). The second field represents the functional area of the event (e.g., ANPK for Animal Packing; SERE for Survival/Evasion; etc.). The last field designates the level and sequence of the event. Figure (1) shows MCWO T&R levels and a sample MCWO T&R event. Event levels are categorized as 1000-level, 2000-level, etc. 1000-level events are individual core skills taught at the formal school. 2000-level events are core-plus skills taught at the formal school or managed on the job training (MOJT). 3000-7000 level events are collective skills that are taught at MCMWTC and reinforced at the unit level when possible. Figure 1-1 provides a detail of MCWO T&R events and coding.

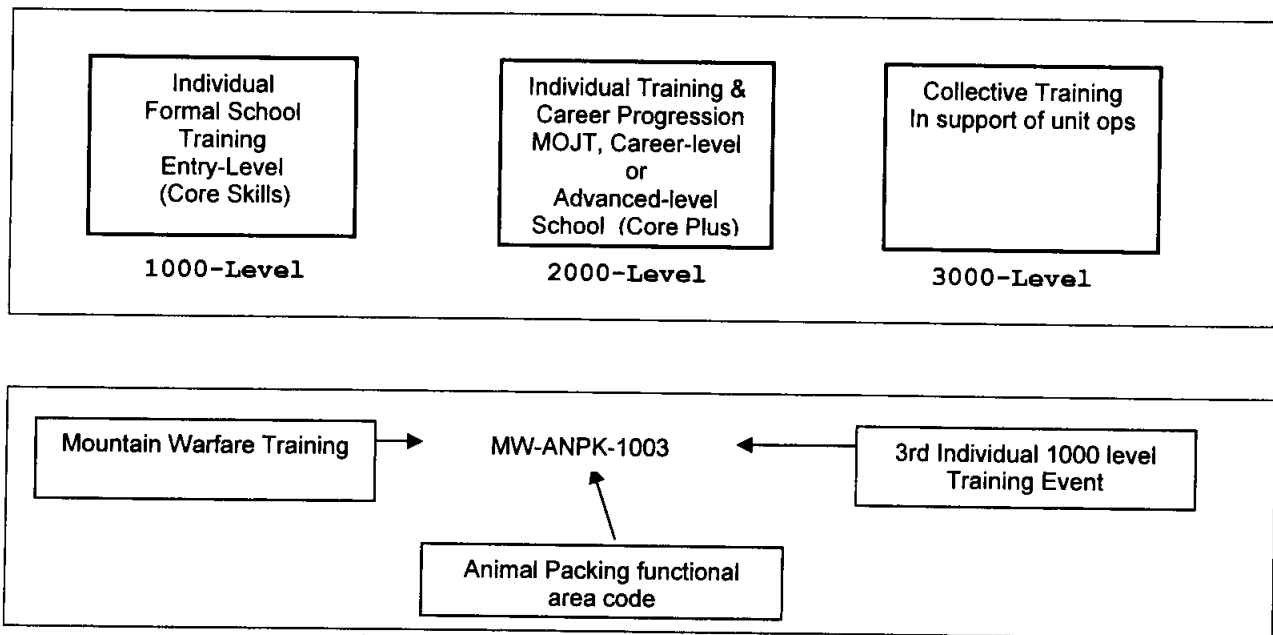


Figure 1-1. Event Levels and Coding.

#### 1004. T&R EVENT DETAIL

1. This section explains each of the elements of a T&R event. These are all the possible items that comprise an event. If a component is not applicable to a particular event, it is omitted.

a. Event-Code. The event-code is a three-field character set. Each field will have up to 4 characters.

- (1) The first field indicates the Community (e.g., MW, MWI).
- (2) The second field indicates functional or duty area (e.g., ANPK, ENG, SERE, etc.).
- (3) The third field indicates the level (1000 through 7000) and sequences (e.g., 001-999).

b. Title. The name of the event.

c. Evaluation-Coded. This is a "yes/no" category indicating whether or not the event is E-Coded. If yes, the event contributes toward CRP of the associated MET. The value of each E-Coded event is based on number of E-Coded events for that MET.

d. Supported MET(s). List all METs that are supported by the training event.

e. Sustainment Interval. This is the period, expressed in number of months, between evaluation and retraining requirements. Skills and capabilities acquired through the accomplishment of training events are to be refreshed at pre-determined intervals. It is essential that these intervals

be adhered to in order to ensure the unit and Marines of the unit maintain proficiency.

f. Billet. Each individual training event will contain a billet code that designates who (by billet) is responsible for performing that event and any corresponding formal course required for that billet. Each commander has the flexibility to shift responsibilities based on the organization of his command. These codes are based on recommendations from the collective subject matter expertise that developed the manual and are listed for each event.

g. Grade. The rank at which MCWO personnel are required to complete the event.

h. Description. Description of event purpose, goals, objectives, and requirements. It is a general description of an action requiring learned skills and knowledge, e.g., perform guard mount post and relief.

i. Condition. The conditions set for real world or combat situation in which the task is to be performed. They indicate what is provided (equipment, tools, materials, manuals, aids, etc.), environmental constraints or conditions under which the task is performed, and any specific cues or indicators to which the performer must respond. When resources or safety requirements limit the conditions, this should be stated.

j. Standard. The performance standard indicates the basis for judging the effectiveness of the performance. It consists of a carefully worded statement that identifies the proficiency level expected when the task is performed. The standard provides the minimum acceptable performance parameters and must be strictly adhered to. The standard for collective events will likely be general, describing the desired end-state or purpose of the event. The standard for individual events will more specifically describe to what proficiency level, specified in terms of accuracy, speed, sequencing, quality of performance, adherence to procedural guidelines, etc., the event is to be accomplished.

k. Event Components. Description of the actions that the event is composed of, or a list of subordinate, included T&R event codes and event descriptions. The event components help the user determine what must be accomplished and to properly plan for the event.

l. Prerequisite Events. Prerequisites are academic training or other T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the task. They are lower-level events or tasks that give the individual/unit the skills required to accomplish the event. They can also be planning steps, administrative requirements, or specific parameters that build toward mission accomplishment.

m. Chained Events. Collective T&R events are supported by lower-level collective and individual T&R events. This enables unit leaders to identify subordinate T&R events that ultimately support specific mission essential tasks. When the accomplishment of any upper-level events, by their nature, result in the performance of certain subordinate and related events, the events are "chained." The completion of chained events will update

sustainment interval credit (and CRP for E-Coded events) for the related subordinate level events.

n. Related ITSSs. A list of all the Individual Training Standards that support the event.

o. References. The training references shall be used to determine task performance steps, grading criteria, and ensure standardization of training procedures. They assist the trainee in satisfying the performance standards, or the trainer in evaluating the effectiveness of task completion. Since T&R Manuals provide only a training outline, references are key elements to developing lesson plans and adding specificity, such as performance steps, related doctrine, or other detailed information.

p. Distance Learning Products. Individual Multimedia Instruction (IMI), Computer-Based Training (CBT), Marine Corps Institute (MCI), etc. Included when the event can be taught via one of these media methods vice attending a formal course of instruction or receiving MOJT.

q. Support Requirements. This is a list of the external and internal support the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. This is a key section in the overall T&R effort, as resources will eventually be tied directly to the training towards METS. Future efforts to attain and allocate resources will be based on the requirements outlined in the T&R Manual. The list includes, but is not limited to:

- (1) Range(s)/Training Area
- (2) Equipment
- (3) Materials
- (4) Other Units/Personnel

r. Miscellaneous. Any additional information that will assist in the planning and execution of the event. The list may include, but is not limited to:

- (1) Admin Instructions
- (2) Special Personnel Certifications
- (3) Equipment Operating Hours

2. Future revisions of this directive may incorporate additional event components as applicable.

## 1005. UNIT TRAINING

1. The unit's training program emphasizes qualifications and the overall combat readiness of the unit. Individual T&R events are the building blocks for overall unit readiness; however, unit training should take priority over training of a select, few individuals. Integration of individual and collective training events into the unit-training plan is essential.

Commanding Officers will ensure that this training philosophy is implemented. Unit training must predominate, and units must tailor their training plans to ensure combat readiness. Commanders should rely upon the expertise of MCWO personnel when conducting MCWO training. Reliance upon MCWO personnel, adherence to the policies contained in the references, and use of this directive constitutes a solid foundation for unit training.

2. The training of Marines to perform as an integrated unit in combat lies at the heart of the T&R program. Unit readiness and individual readiness are directly related. Individual training and the mastery of individual core skills serve as the building blocks for unit combat readiness. A Marine's ability to perform critical skills required in combat is essential; however, it is not necessary to have all individuals within an organization fully trained in order for that organization to accomplish its assigned tasks. Manpower shortfalls, temporary assignments, leave, or other factors outside the commander's control, often affect the ability to conduct individual training. Regardless of current manning, the unit must maintain the ability to accomplish its assigned mission.

3. Commanders shall ensure that all tactical training is conducted to a T&R collective standard. The T&R manual is the unit training standard, and all training events shall support the unit METL and be tailored to meet T&R standards.

4. Commanders shall provide personnel the opportunities to attend formal and operational level courses of instruction as required by reference (e). Attendance at all formal courses must enhance the warfighting capabilities of the unit.

**1006. REQUIREMENTS FOR COLLECTIVE TRAINING.** Collective training shall serve to achieve standards of unit proficiency required to accomplish wartime missions. Subject to such constraints as safety requirements and limits on space for training, all collective training shall be conducted under conditions and rates of activity closely approximating those that the units being trained may encounter in combat. When constraints limit the use of realistic training conditions, then simulation and other products of training technology shall be used as applicable to enhance realism. Collective training to the degree feasible shall include electronic warfare activity, nuclear, biological and chemical defense activity, and the periodic use of opposing forces trained in the tactics of potential adversaries. All collective training exercises shall emphasize realistic performance of the functions of individual personnel in the exercising units. Support units shall be integrated into exercises for realistic training in their wartime supporting roles.

#### **1007. NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, CHEMICAL (NBC) TRAINING**

1. All personnel assigned to the operating force must be trained in NBCD in order to survive and continue their mission in an NBC environment. Individual proficiency standards are defined as survival and basic operating standards. Survival standards are those that the individual must master in order to survive NBC attacks. Basic operating standards are those that the individual, and collectively the unit, must be capable of performing to

continue operations in an NBC environment. In order to develop and maintain the ability to operate in an NBC environment, NBC training should be an integral part of the training plan and events in this directive should be trained under NBC conditions whenever possible.

2. NBCD officers and specialists are instrumental in integrating realistic scenarios/situations that challenge units' ability to operate in an NBC environment.

3. Further guidance on NBCD training is found in reference (f).

**1008. NIGHT TRAINING.** While it is understood that all personnel and units of the operating force must be capable of performing their assigned mission in "every clime and place," current doctrine emphasizes the requirement to perform assigned missions at night and during periods of limited visibility. Basic skills are significantly more difficult when visibility is limited. To ensure units are capable of accomplishing their mission at night as well as during the day, they must train under the more difficult limited visibility conditions. As such, all events in this directive should be conducted during the day and at night or under conditions of limited visibility. When there is limited training time available, night training should be conducted in lieu of day training.

**1009. APPLICATION OF SIMULATION.** Simulators and other training devices for weapon systems and equipment shall be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on the actual equipment. Particular emphasis shall be placed on simulators that provide training that might be limited by safety considerations or constraints on training space, time, or other resources. When deciding on simulation issues, the primary consideration shall be improving the quality of training and consequently the state of readiness. Potential savings in operating and support costs normally shall be an important secondary consideration.

#### **1010. UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT**

1. Unit training management (UTM) is the application of the Marine Corps Training Principles and the Systems Approach to Training to satisfy the training requirements of commanders at all levels in order to accomplish their wartime mission. Guidance for UTM and the process for establishing effective UTM programs are contained in references (c), (d), and, (e). These references are the basis for the development of this directive. Familiarity with (c) will enhance understanding of the Systems Approach to Training (SAT) process used in METL development and Marine Corps UTM principles.

2. UTM focuses training on the tasks that are essential to a unit's wartime capabilities. The SAT process provides commanders with the requisite tools and techniques to analyze, design, develop, implement, and evaluate the training of their unit. The Marine Corps training principles provide sound and proven direction and are flexible enough to accommodate the demands of local conditions. These principles are not inclusive, nor do they guarantee success. They are guides that commanders can use to manage unit-training programs. The Marine Corps training principles are:

- a. Train as you fight.
- b. Make commanders responsible for training.
- c. Use standards-based training.
- d. Use performance-oriented training.
- e. Use mission-oriented training.
- f. Train the MAGTF to fight as a combined arms team.
- g. Train to sustain proficiency.
- h. Train to challenge.

3. To maintain an efficient, effective training program, it is imperative that commanders at every level fully understand and implement UTM. Further guidance and other training resources can be found on the UTM website at <http://www.tecom.usmc.mil/utm/>.

#### **1011. TRAINING EVALUATION**

1. The purpose of formal and informal evaluation is to provide commanders with a process to determine a unit's proficiency in the tasks it must successfully perform in combat. Informal evaluations should be conducted during every training evaluation. Formal evaluations are often scenario-based, focused on the unit's METs, based on collective training standards, and usually conducted during higher-level collective events.

2. Evaluation is a continuous process. Evaluation is integral to training management and is conducted by leaders at every level and during all phases of the planning and conduct of training. Training evaluations measure individual and collective ability to perform events specified in this directive. To ensure MCWO training is efficient and effective, it is imperative that evaluation be an integral part of the training plan. References (a), (c), and (e) provide further guidance on the conduct of informal and formal evaluations.

**1012. OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM).** ORM is a process that enables commanders to plan for and minimize risk while still accomplishing the mission. It is a decision making tool used by Marines at all levels to increase operational effectiveness by anticipating hazards and reducing the potential for loss, thereby increasing the probability of a successful mission. ORM minimizes risks to acceptable levels, commensurate with mission accomplishment. Commanders, leaders, maintainers, planners, and schedulers shall integrate risk assessment in the decision-making process and implement hazard controls to reduce risk to acceptable levels. Applying the ORM process will reduce mishaps, lower costs, and provide for more efficient use of resources. ORM assists the commander in conserving lives and resources and avoiding unnecessary risk, making an informed decision to implement a course of action (COA), identifying feasible and effective control measures where specific measures do not exist, and providing reasonable alternatives

for mission accomplishment. Most importantly, ORM assists the commander in determining the balance between training realism and unnecessary risks in training, the impact of training operations on the environment, and the adjustment of training plans to fit the level of proficiency and experience of Marines and leaders. Further guidance for ORM can be found in reference (a).

**1013. CAREER PROFESSIONAL READING.** Marines must continue to strive for excellence in all they do. The career professional reading lists contained in each chapter are finite examples developed by the SMEs who developed this manual of the vast array of materials available for professional and career development. These voluntary reading materials are included to augment core training and help to improve the proficiency of formal school and detachment staff.

**1014. CONCLUSION.** The Marine Corps Ground T&R Program continues to evolve. The vision for this program is that it will link the Uniform Joint Task List (UJTL), the Uniform Navy Task List (UNTL), and the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL) to METLs and unit training. In doing so, it will tie all training and training resources directly to unit missions. The Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS) is currently being developed and encompasses Enhanced Status of Resources and Training System (ESORTS). The purpose of this system is to measure and report on the readiness of military forces and the supporting infrastructure to meet missions and goals assigned by the Secretary of Defense. Training readiness in DRRS will be based primarily on METs. Because unit CRP is based on the unit's training towards its METs, it will provide a more accurate picture of a unit's ability to accomplish its mission. This will give fidelity to future funding requests and factor into the allocation of resources. Additionally, the Ground T&R Program will help to ensure training remains focused on mission accomplishment and that training readiness reporting is tied to commanders' METLs.

MCWO T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 2

MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

|   | <u>PARAGRAPH</u> | <u>PAGE</u> |
|---|------------------|-------------|
| MCWO MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX . . . . . | 2000             | 2-2         |

**2000. MCWO MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX.** The MCWO Mission Essential Task List (METL) Table includes the designated MET number. The following event codes are the linked collective events that support the MET.

**MET#/MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK**

| <b>MET 1. Employ specialized mountain/cold weather clothing and equipment</b> |  |
|---|--|
| MW-CLMB-3002  | Establish a fixed rope installation                          |
| MW-CLMB-3003  | Establish a top rope site                                    |
| MW-CLMB-3004  | Party climb a vertical or near vertical (5th Class) obstacle |
| MW-TRST-3005  | Establish a high-tension rope installation                   |
| MW-TRST-3006  | Establish a raising/lowering system                          |
| MW-TRST-3007  | Establish a rappel site                                      |
| MW-MOVE-3008  | Establish a water crossing site                              |
| MW-MOVE-3009  | Establish a frozen-water obstacle crossing                   |
| MW-MOVE-3011  | Employ the sled  |
| MW-MOVE-3012  | Conduct skijoring operations                                 |
| MW-CLMB-4001  | Negotiate a vertical or near vertical (5th Class) obstacle   |
| MW-TRST-4003  | Operate a high-tension rope installation                     |
| MW-TRST-4004  | Operate a raising/lowering system                            |
| MW-TRST-4005  | Operate a rappelling sit                                     |
| MW-MOVE-4008  | Establish a bivouac site                                     |
| MW-MOVE-4009  | Cross a water obstacle                                       |
| MW-MOVE-4010  | Cross a frozen-water obstacle                                |
| MW-MOVE-4011  | Conduct skijoring operations                                 |
| MW-CLMB-5001  | Negotiate a vertical or near vertical (5th Class) obstacle   |
| MW-CLMB-5002  | Conduct a cliff assault                                      |
| MW-MOVE-5003  | Cross water obstacle   |
| MW-MOVE-5004  | Cross a frozen-water obstacle                                |
| MW-MOVE-5005  | Establish a bivouac site                                     |
| MW-MOVE-5006  | Conduct skijoring operations                                 |
| MW-ANPK-5007  | Conduct a bivouac routine with a pack string                 |
| MW-ANPK-5008  | Employ a pack string   |
| MW-CLMB-6001  | Negotiate a vertical or near vertical (5th Class) obstacle   |
| MW-CLMB-6002  | Conduct a cliff assault                                      |
| MW-MOVE-6003  | Cross a frozen-water obstacle                                |
| MW-MOVE-6004  | Cross a water obstacle                                       |
| MW-MOVE-6005  | Establish a bivouac site                                     |
| MW-ANPK-6006  | Execute a movement utilizing a pack string                   |
| MW-ANPK-6007  | Conduct a bivouac routine with a pack string                 |
| MW-CLMB-7001  | Conduct a cliff assault                                      |
| <b>MET 2. Survive in a Mountain/cold weather environment.</b>                 |  |
| MW-MOVE-3008  | Establish a water crossing site                              |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| MW-MOVE-3009   | Establish a frozen water obstacle crossing                   |
| MW-MOVE-3010   | Establish a team tent position                               |
| MW-MOVE-3011   | Employ the sled  |
| MW-MOVE-4008   | Establish a bivouac site                                     |
| MW-MOVE-4009   | Cross a water obstacle                                       |
| MW-MOVE-4010   | Cross a frozen-water obstacle                                |
| MW-MOVE-5003   | Cross a water obstacle                                       |
| MW-MOVE-5004   | Cross a frozen-water obstacle                                |
| MW-MOVE-5005   | Establish a bivouac site                                     |
| MW-MOVE-6003   | Cross a frozen-water obstacle                                |
| MW-MOVE-6004   | Cross a water obstacle                                       |
| MW-MOVE-6005   | Establish a bivouac site                                     |
| <b>MET 3. Mitigate the effects the mountain/cold weather environment exerts on operations.</b> |  |
| MW-ANPK-3001   | Employ a pack string   |
| MW-CLMB-3002   | Establish a fixed rope installation                          |
| MW-CLMB-3003   | Establish a top rope site                                    |
| MW-CLMB-3004   | Party climb a vertical or near vertical (5th Class) obstacle |
| MW-TRST-3005   | Establish a high-tension rope installation                   |
| MW-TRST-3006   | Establish a raising/lowering system                          |
| MW-TRST-3007   | Establish a rappel site                                      |
| MW-MOVE-3008   | Establish a water crossing site                              |
| MW-MOVE-3009   | Establish a frozen-water obstacle crossing                   |
| MW-MOVE-3010   | Establish a team tent position                               |
| MW-MOVE-3011   | Employ the sled  |
| MW-MOVE-3012   | Conduct skijoring operations                                 |
| MW-CLMB-4001   | Negotiate a vertical or near vertical (5th Class) obstacle   |
| MW-CLMB-4002   | Conduct a reconnaissance of a cliff assault site             |
| MW-TRST-4003   | Operate a high tension rope installation                     |
| MW-TRST-4004   | Operate a raising/lowering system                            |
| MW-TRST-4005   | Operate a rappelling site                                    |
| MW-ANPK-4006   | Employ a pack string   |
| MW-ANPK-4007   | Conduct a bivouac routine with a pack string                 |
| MW-MOVE-4008   | Establish a bivouac site                                     |
| MW-MOVE-4009   | Cross a water obstacle                                       |
| MW-MOVE-4010   | Cross a frozen-water obstacle                                |
| MW-MOVE-4011   | Conduct skijoring operations                                 |
| MW-CLMB-5001   | Negotiate a vertical or near vertical (5th Class) obstacle   |
| MW-CLMB-5002   | Conduct a cliff assault                                      |
| MW-MOVE-5003   | Cross water obstacle   |
| MW-MOVE-5004   | Cross a frozen-water obstacle                                |
| MW-MOVE-5005   | Establish a bivouac site                                     |
| MW-MOVE-5006   | Conduct skijoring operations                                 |

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| MW-ANPK-5007 | Conduct a bivouac routine with a pack string               |
| MW-ANPK-5008 | Employ a pack string                                       |
| MW-CLMB-6001 | Negotiate a vertical or near vertical (5th Class) obstacle |
| MW-CLMB-6002 | Conduct a cliff assault                                    |
| MW-MOVE-6003 | Cross a frozen-water obstacle                              |
| MW-MOVE-6004 | Cross a water obstacle                                     |
| MW-MOVE-6005 | Establish a bivouac site                                   |
| MW-ANPK-6006 | Execute a movement utilizing a pack string                 |
| MW-ANPK-6007 | Conduct a bivouac routine with a pack string               |
| MW-CLMB-7001 | Conduct a cliff assault                                    |

MCWO T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 3

COLLECTIVE EVENTS

|                                 | <u>PARAGRAPH</u> | <u>PAGE</u> |
|---------------------------------|------------------|-------------|
| PURPOSE.....                    | 3000             | 3-2         |
| ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES.....       | 3001             | 3-2         |
| INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS..... | 3002             | 3-3         |
| COLLECTIVE EVENTS.....          | 3003             | 3-5         |

MCWO T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 3

COLLECTIVE EVENTS

**3000. PURPOSE.** This chapter includes all collective training events for Mountain Cold Weather Operations. A collective event is an event that a trained operating force unit would accomplish in the execution of Mission Essential Tasks (METs). These events are linked to a Service-Level Mission Essential Task. This linkage tailor's individual and collective training for the selected MET. Each event is composed of a collective event title, event description, condition, and standard. Accomplishment and proficiency level required is determined by the event standard.

**3001. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES.** T&R events are coded for ease of reference. Each event has up to 4-4-4-character identifier.

- a. The first up to four characters represent the community:

MW - Mountain Warfare

- b. The second up to four characters represent the functional or duty area. This chapter contains the duty areas listed below. See Appendix A for functional area descriptions.

ANPK - Animal Packing  
AVAL - Avalanche  
CLEQ - Clothing and Equipment  
CLMB - Climbing  
ENG - Engineer  
ENVR - Environment  
HRST - Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques  
MOVE - Movement  
SERE - Survival and Evasion  
TRST - Tactical Rope Suspension Techniques

- c. The last four characters represent the level (3000) and sequence (3001-3012) of the event. The MCWO collective training events are all captured in the 3000-7000 Level.

3002. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS

| EVENT        | DESCRIPTION  | PAGE |
|--------------|--|------|
|              | ANIMAL PACKING   |      |
| MW-ANPK-3001 | Employ a pack string   | 3-5  |
| MW-ANPK-4006 | Employ a pack string   | 3-18 |
| MW-ANPK-4007 | Conduct a bivouac routine with a pack string                 | 3-18 |
| MW-ANPK-5007 | Conduct a bivouac routine with a pack string                 | 3-25 |
| MW-ANPK-5008 | Employ a pack string   | 3-26 |
| MW-ANPK-6006 | Execute a movement utilizing a pack string                   | 3-30 |
| MW-ANPK-6007 | Conduct a bivouac routine with a pack string                 | 3-31 |
|              | CLIMBING   |      |
| MW-CLMB-3002 | Establish a fixed rope installation                          | 3-6  |
| MW-CLMB-3003 | Establish a top rope site                                    | 3-6  |
| MW-CLMB-3004 | Party climb a vertical or near vertical (5th class) obstacle | 3-7  |
| MW-CLMB-4001 | Negotiate a vertical to near vertical (5th class) obstacle   | 3-14 |
| MW-CLMB-4002 | Conduct a reconnaissance of a cliff assault site             | 3-15 |
| MW-CLMB-5001 | Negotiate a vertical to near vertical (5th class) obstacle   | 3-21 |
| MW-CLMB-5002 | Conduct a cliff assault                                      | 3-22 |
| MW-CLMB-6001 | Negotiate a vertical to near vertical (5th class) obstacle   | 3-27 |
| MW-CLMB-6002 | Conduct a cliff assault                                      | 3-27 |
| MW-CLMB-7001 | Conduct a cliff assault                                      | 3-31 |
|              | TACTICAL ROPE SUSPENSION TECHNIQUES                          |      |
| MW-TRST-3005 | Establish a high-tension rope installation                   | 3-8  |
| MW-TRST-3006 | Establish a raising/lowering system                          | 3-9  |
| MW-TRST-3007 | Establish a rappel site                                      | 3-10 |
| MW-TRST-4003 | Operate a high-tension rope installation                     | 3-15 |
| MW-TRST-4004 | Operate a raising/lowering system                            | 3-16 |
| MW-TRST-4005 | Operate a rappel site  | 3-17 |
|              | MOVEMENT   |      |
| MW-MOVE-3008 | Establish a water crossing site                              | 3-10 |
| MW-MOVE-3009 | Establish a frozen-water obstacle crossing                   | 3-11 |
| MW-MOVE-3010 | Establish a tent team position                               | 3-12 |
| MW-MOVE-3011 | Employ a sled  | 3-13 |
| MW-MOVE-3012 | Conduct skijoring operations                                 | 3-13 |
| MW-MOVE-4008 | Establish a bivouac site                                     | 3-19 |
| MW-MOVE-4009 | Cross a water obstacle                                       | 3-19 |
| MW-MOVE-4010 | Cross a frozen-water obstacle                                | 3-20 |

|              |                               |      |
|--------------|-------------------------------|------|
| MW-MOVE-4011 | Conduct skjoring operations   | 3-21 |
| MW-MOVE-5003 | Cross a water obstacle        | 3-23 |
| MW-MOVE-5004 | Cross a frozen-water obstacle | 3-23 |
| MW-MOVE-5005 | Establish a bivouac site      | 3-24 |
| MW-MOVE-5006 | Conduct skjoring operations   | 3-25 |
| MW-MOVE-6003 | Cross a frozen-water obstacle | 3-28 |
| MW-MOVE-6004 | Cross a water obstacle        | 3-29 |
| MW-MOVE-6005 | Establish a bivouac site      | 3-29 |

### 3003. COLLECTIVE EVENTS

MW-ANPK-3001: Employ a pack string

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

DESCRIPTION: This task is executed by leading a string of animals through any and all terrain that is indigenous to the pack animals.

CONDITION: In any environment, given pack animals, pack equipment, and the requirement to conduct pack string operations, under any condition.

STANDARD: To efficiently move equipment and personnel.

#### EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Identify the necessary personnel for animal packing.
2. Identify the local pack species.
3. Identify the anatomy of a pack animal.
4. Select a pack animal for military operations.
5. Identify the tack required for animal packing.
6. Perform first aid on an injured animal
7. Perform maintenance on an animals hoof.
8. Saddle a pack animal.
9. Distribute the weight on a pack animal.
10. Secure a load to a pack animal.
11. Prepare a CASEVAC saddle.
12. Negotiate obstacles with pack animals.
13. Establish a bivouac site with a pack string.
14. Employ a pack animal.
15. Employ a pack string.
16. Plan for the employment of pack animals.

#### PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

|              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| MW-ANPK-2001 | MW-ANPK-1001 | MW-ANPK-1014 |
| MW-ANPK-1013 | MW-ANPK-1012 | MW-ANPK-1011 |
| MW-ANPK-1010 | MW-ANPK-1009 | MW-ANPK-1008 |
| MW-ANPK-1007 | MW-ANPK-1006 | MW-ANPK-1005 |
| MW-ANPK-1004 | MW-ANPK-1003 | MW-ANPK-1002 |
| MW-ANPK-1015 |              |              |

#### REFERENCES:

1. 0-87842-127-0 Packing' In On Mules and Horses
2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

#### SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

##### RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**MW-CLMB-3002:** Establish a fixed rope installation

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event will allow the unit to climb moderate to vertical terrain using one or all of the four types of fixed rope installations.

**CONDITION:** Given a two to four man team, in a mountainous environment, given a MACK and T/E.

**STANDARD:** To allow a unit to safely and efficiently negotiate moderate to vertical terrain using one or all of the four types of fixed rope installations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Select a route.
2. Construct anchors
3. Establish a simple fixed rope lane
4. Establish a semi fixed rope lane.
5. Establish a fixed rope lane.
6. Establish a cable ladder lane.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
3. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
4. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
5. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
6. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** MACK

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** This event must be conducted under the direct supervision of a current, qualified TRST.

---

**MW-CLMB-3003:** Establish a top rope site

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event will allow the unit to climb vertical to near vertical (5th class) terrain using top rope techniques with a safety line and

a belay man.

**CONDITION:** Given a two to four man team, in a mountainous environment, given a MACK and T/E.

**STANDARD:** To allow a unit to safely and efficiently negotiate vertical to near vertical (5th class) terrain using top rope techniques with a safety line and a belay man.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Construct an anchor.
2. Secure a climber to a rope.
3. Establish a belay stance from the top.
4. Establish a belay stance from the bottom.
5. Utilize a munter hitch.
6. Execute climbing commands.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
4. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** MACK

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** This event must be conducted under the direct supervision of a current, qualified TRST.

---

**MW-CLMB-3004:** Party climb a vertical or near vertical (5th class) obstacle

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event allows a climbing team to utilize lead party climbing techniques to ascend vertical or near vertical (5th class) obstacles. The leader must be a current, qualified Assault Climber.

**CONDITION:** Given a climbing team, in a mountainous environment, given a MACK and T/E.

**STANDARD:** To ascend vertical or near vertical (5th class) obstacle, safely and efficiently utilize lead party climbing techniques.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:** Climb a multi-pitch mixed (4th class/5th class) route.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
4. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** Climbing rack, climbing rope, and helmets.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** The lead climber for this event must be a current and qualified Assault Climber. The second climber may be a current, qualified Assault Climber or TRST.

---

**MW-TRST-3005:** Establish a high-tension rope installation

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event will allow a two man team to establish a high tension rope system to allow a unit to move personnel and equipment over or across an obstacle. One of those two men must be a current, qualified Assault Climber.

**CONDITION:** Given a two to four man team, in any environment, a MACK, and T/E.

**STANDARD:** To allow a unit to move personnel and equipment safely and efficiently over or across an obstacle in accordance with the references.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Organize personnel/equipment.
2. Select a site.
3. Establish local security.
4. Implement control/safety measures.
5. Construct the high-tension rope installation.
6. Retrieve the high-tension rope installation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
4. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

EQUIPMENT: MACK

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: This event must be conducted under the direct supervision of a current, qualified TRST.

---

MW-TRST-3006: Establish a raising/lowering system

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

DESCRIPTION: This event will allow a two man team to establish a raising/lowering system to allow a unit to raise/lower gear and equipment on a vertical to near vertical obstacle. One of those two men must be a current, qualified Tactical Rope Suspension Technician (TRST).

CONDITION: Given a two to four man team, in any environment, a MACK, and T/E.

STANDARD: To allow a unit to move personnel and equipment safely and efficiently over or across an obstacle. One of those two men must be a current, qualified Tactical Rope Suspension Technician (TRST).

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Organize personnel/equipment.
2. Select a site.
3. Establish local security.
4. Implement control/safety measures.
5. Construct the raising/lowering system.
6. Employ height gaining device, if necessary.
7. Deploy ropes.
8. Retrieve the equipment.

REFERENCES:

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
4. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

EQUIPMENT: MACK

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: This event must be conducted under the direct supervision of a current, qualified TRST.

---

**MW-TRST-3007:** Establish a rappel site

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event will allow a two man team to establish a rappel site to allow a unit to descend a vertical to near vertical obstacle. One of those two men must be a current, qualified Tactical Rope Suspension Technician (TRST).

**CONDITION:** Given a two to four man team, in any environment, a MACK, and T/E.

**STANDARD:** To allow a unit to safely and efficiently descend a vertical to near vertical obstacle in accordance with the references.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Organize personnel/equipment.
2. Select a site.
3. Establish local security.
4. Implement control/safety measures.
5. Construct the rappel site.
6. Deploy ropes.
7. Retrieve the rope.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
4. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** MACK

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** This event must be conducted under the direct supervision of a current, qualified TRST.

---

**MW-MOVE-3008:** Establish a water crossing site

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event is designed to teach a unit the site selection considerations, safety precautions, and team crossing techniques utilized in

crossing a water obstacle.

**CONDITION:** Given a two to four man team, in a mountainous environment, and T/E.

**STANDARD:** To allow a unit to safely and efficiently negotiate a water obstacle.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Organize personnel/equipment.
2. Implement site selection criteria
3. Establish local security.
4. Implement safety precautions.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
3. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
4. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** To accomplish this task the marines will need the following; two safety swimmers with life vests, one safety line and two throw bags.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** The two safety swimmers need to be WS-1 or higher.

---

**MW-MOVE-3009:** Establish a frozen-water obstacle crossing

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event is designed to teach a unit how to determine ice stability, use the tools and special equipment required, how to select a safe route, how to cross the obstacle, the safety precautions involved, and how to conduct a self rescue.

**CONDITION:** Given a two to four man team, in a cold weather environment, T/E, and selected items.

**STANDARD:** To allow a unit to safely and efficiently move personnel and equipment across a frozen-water obstacle.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Organize personnel/equipment.
2. Select a site.
3. Establish local security.

4. Conduct ice reconnaissance.
5. Select a route.
6. Cross selected route.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
2. FM 31-72 Mountain Operations
3. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** Ice-measuring rod, ice auger/axe-bar, chisel/spud, ice saw, weighted depth cord, NBC detector, probes, mine detectors, belay rope, axe, and ski poles or staff.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** To conduct this training it is a requirement that there is frozen water obstacle.

---

**MW-MOVE-3010:** Establish a tent team position

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event teaches the unit how to select the correct site, establish defensive positions, dig in the living areas/trench plan, and how to live in a cold weather/snow covered environment.

**CONDITION:** Given a two to four man team, in a cold weather environment, T/E, and MCWIK.

**STANDARD:** To provide security and survivability appropriate to the tactical and environmental situation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Organize personal and equipment.
2. Select a site.
3. Establish local security
4. Establish the tent site
5. Construct the tent
6. Construct living areas
7. Construct defensive positions.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

MW-MOVE-1079

MW-MOVE-1078

MW-AVAL-2006

MW-CLEQ-1035

MW-CLEQ-1034

MW-MOVE-1082

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** MCWIK

---

**MW-MOVE-3011:** Employ the sled

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event teaches the unit how to negotiate snow covered terrain while pulling a MCWIK sled. The unit is broken down into three elements, a trail breaking team, a sled pulling team, and a security team.

**CONDITION:** Given a two to four man team, in a snow covered environment, T/E, and MCWIK.

**STANDARD:** To efficiently transport equipment, utilizing procedures appropriate to the tactical and environmental situation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Select a route.
2. Employ snowshoes
3. Employ skis
4. Operate as part of a trail breaking team.
5. Operate as part of a sled pulling team.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS
3. Marine Corps Mountain Warfare Nordic Ski Instruction Manual

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** Over-the-snow mobility equipment and a MCWIK sled.

---

**MW-MOVE-3012:** Conduct skijoring operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event is designed to teach the unit to quickly traverse snow covered terrain by being pulled behind a vehicle using ropes.

**CONDITION:** Given a two to four man team, a vehicle, and T/E, in a snow covered environment.

**STANDARD:** To quickly traverse snow covered terrain being pulled behind a vehicle using ropes in a safe and efficient manner.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Employ skis.
2. Implement safety requirements for skijoring.
3. Prepare a vehicle for skijoring.
4. Implement skijoring techniques.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS
2. Marine Corps Mountain Warfare Nordic Ski Instruction Manual

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** Vehicle capable of traveling over the snow, a driver, a safety observer, a pair of skis with poles, and a static rope.

---

**MW-CLMB-4001:** Negotiate a vertical to near vertical (5th class) obstacle

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event will allow the unit to climb moderate to vertical terrain using top rope lanes and/or one or all of the four types of fixed rope installations.

**CONDITION:** Given a squad size unit, in a mountainous environment, a MACK, and T/E.

**STANDARD:** To safely and efficiently negotiate vertical to near vertical (5th class) terrain, utilizing top-roping techniques, and/or fixed rope installations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Ascend a simple fixed rope.
2. Ascend a semi fixed rope.
3. Ascend a fixed rope.
4. Ascend a cable ladder.
5. Ascend a top rope.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
4. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** MACK

---

**MW-CLMB-4002:** Conduct a reconnaissance of a cliff assault site

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event will enable the squad to assess the feasibility for ascent of any given cliff through the use of the cliff sketch and the cliff report.

**CONDITION:** Given a squad size unit, in a mountainous environment, a MACK, and T/E.

**STANDARD:** To assess the feasibility for ascent of any given cliff through the use of the cliff sketch and the cliff report.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Construct a cliff sketch
2. Write a cliff report

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
4. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** Sketchbook and a cliff report format.

---

**MW-TRST-4003:** Operate a high-tension rope installation

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event will allow a unit to operate a high-tension rope installation, under the guidance and supervision of a current, qualified Tactical Rope Suspension Technician (TRST), to move personnel, and equipment across an obstacle.

**CONDITION:** Given a squad size unit, in any environment, a MACK, and T/E.  
**STANDARD:** To safely and efficiently move personnel and equipment across an obstacle.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Organize personnel/equipment.
2. Provide local security.
3. Enforce control/safety measures.
4. Perform duties assigned by the TRST.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
4. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** MACK

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** This event must be conducted under the direct supervision of a current, qualified TRST.

---

**MW-TRST-4004:** Operate a raising/lowering system

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event allows a unit to operate a raising/lowering system to move personnel or equipment on vertical to near vertical terrain, directly supervised by a current, qualified Tactical Rope Suspension Technician (TRST).

**CONDITION:** Given a squad size unit, in any environment, a MACK, and T/E.

**STANDARD:** To safely and efficiently move personnel and equipment to a higher elevation or across an obstacle.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Organize personnel/equipment.
2. Provide local security.
3. Enforce control/safety measures.
4. Perform duties assigned by the TRST.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills

3. FM 31-72 Mountain Operations
4. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** MACK

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** This event must be conducted under the direct supervision of a current, qualified TRST.

---

**MW-TRST-4005:** Operate a rappel site

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event allows a unit to descend by rope, vertical to near vertical terrain, directly supervised by a current, qualified Tactical Rope Suspension Technician (TRST).

**CONDITION:** Given a squad size unit, in any environment, a MACK, and T/E.

**STANDARD:** To safely and efficiently descend a vertical to near vertical obstacle by means of rappelling.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Organize personnel/equipment.
2. Provide local security.
3. Enforce control/safety measures.
4. Perform duties assigned by the TRST.
5. Descend by means of rappelling.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
3. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
4. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** MACK

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** This event must be conducted under the direct

supervision of a current qualified TRST.

---

**MW-ANPK-4006:** Employ a pack string

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This task is executed by leading a string of animals through any and all terrain that is indigenous to the pack animals.

**CONDITION:** Given a squad size unit, in any environment, given pack animals, pack equipment, and the requirement to conduct pack string operations, under any condition.

**STANDARD:** To efficiently move equipment and personnel using pack animals.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify the necessary personnel for animal packing.
2. Identify the local pack species.
3. Identify the anatomy of a pack animal.
4. Select a pack animal for military operations.
5. Identify the tack required for animal packing.
6. Perform first aid on an injured animal
7. Perform maintenance on an animals hoof.
8. Saddle a pack animal.
9. Distribute the weight on a pack animal.
10. Secure a load to a pack animal.
11. Prepare a CASEVAC saddle.
12. Negotiate obstacles with pack animals.
13. Establish a bivouac site with a pack string.
14. Employ a pack animal.
15. Employ a pack string.
16. Plan for the employment of pack animals.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-87842-127-0 Packin' In On Mules and Horses
2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

---

**MW-ANPK-4007:** Conduct bivouac routine with a pack string

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Be able to retain the animals in a given area, while conducting bivouac routine. This is executed by the designated personnel; the required actions are conducted to care for the animals.

**CONDITION:** Given a squad size unit, in a mountainous environment, given a pack string, the required gear, and the requirement to establish a bivouac site, under any condition.

**STANDARD:** To select and establish a bivouac site that provides all-around

security for personnel, equipment, and the pack string.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. State the selection criteria for selecting a bivouac site.
2. Describe the organization of a bivouac site.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-87842-127-0 Packin' In On Mules and Horses
  2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual
- 

**MW-MOVE-4008:** Establish a bivouac site

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event teaches the unit how to select the correct site, establish defensive positions, dig in the living areas/trench plan, and how to live in a cold weather/snow covered environment.

**CONDITION:** Given a squad size unit, in a cold weather environment, and T/E.

**STANDARD:** To provide security and survivability, appropriate to the tactical, and environmental situation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Organize personnel and equipment.
2. Conduct a site reconnaissance.
3. Establish local security.
4. Occupy the site.
5. Establish defensive positions.
6. Establish bivouac and living areas.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 31-70 Basic Cold Weather Operations
3. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** One MCWIK per four men.

---

**MW-MOVE-4009:** Cross a water obstacle

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event is designed to teach a unit the site selection considerations, safety precautions, and team crossing techniques utilized in

crossing a water obstacle.

**CONDITION:** Given a squad size unit, in a mountainous environment, T/E, and MACK.

**STANDARD:** To safely and efficiently, while providing all-around security, move personnel, and equipment across the obstacle maintaining 100 percent accountability of personnel and equipment.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Employ individual safety precautions.
2. Utilize individual crossing preparations.
3. Employ team crossing techniques.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
3. FM 31-72 Mountain Operations
4. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
5. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** Two safety swimmers with life vests, one safety line, and two throw bags.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** The safety swimmers should be WS-1 or higher.

---

**MW-MOVE-4010:** Cross a frozen-water obstacle

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event is designed to teach a unit how to determine ice stability, use the tools and special equipment required, how to select a safe route, how to cross the obstacle, the safety precautions involved, and how to conduct a self rescue.

**CONDITION:** Given a squad size unit, in a cold weather environment, T/E, and selected items.

**STANDARD:** To safely and efficiently negotiate the obstacle while maintaining security and 100 percent accountability of personnel and equipment.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Employ individual safety precautions.
2. Utilize self rescue techniques.
3. Cross the selected route.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
3. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** Belay rope, Ski poles or staff.

---

**MW-MOVE-4011:** Conduct skijoring operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event is designed to teach the unit to quickly traverse snow covered terrain by being pulled behind a vehicle using ropes.

**CONDITION:** Given a squad size unit, a vehicle, in a snow covered environment, and T/E.

**STANDARD:** To quickly traverse snow covered terrain being pulled behind a vehicle using ropes in a safe and efficient manner.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Employ skis.
2. Implement safety requirements for skijoring.
3. Prepare vehicle for skijoring.
4. Implement skijoring techniques.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS
2. Marine Corps Mountain Warfare Nordic Ski Instruction Manual

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** Vehicle capable of traveling over the snow, a driver, a safety observer, a pair of skis with poles per man, and a static rope.

---

**MW-CLMB-5001:** Negotiate a vertical to near vertical (5th class) obstacle

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event will allow the unit to climb moderate to vertical terrain using top rope lanes and/or one or all of the four-types of fixed rope installations.

**CONDITION:** Given a platoon size unit, in a mountainous environment, a MACK, and T/E.

**STANDARD:** To safely and efficiently negotiate vertical to near vertical (5th class) terrain, utilizing top-rope techniques and/or fixed rope installations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Ascend a simple fixed rope.
2. Ascend a semi fixed rope.
3. Ascend a fixed rope.
4. Ascend a cable ladder.
5. Ascend a top rope.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
4. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** MACK

---

**MW-CLMB-5002:** Conduct a cliff assault

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event will allow the unit to conduct a cliff assault by conducting a cliff reconnaissance, utilizing the cliff assault planning considerations, and following the five phases of the cliff assault.

**CONDITION:** Given a platoon size unit, in a mountainous environment, a MACK, and T/E.

**STANDARD:** To secure an enemy objective accessible only by utilizing individual climbing skills, utilizing the five phases of the cliff assault.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct a cliff reconnaissance.
2. Utilize the cliff assault planning considerations.
3. Establish a cliff assault site

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
2. FM 31-72 Mountain Operations
3. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
4. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** MACK, and depending on the cliff head itself, special equipment for ice and/or steep earth, and 6-8 SKEDs for CASEVAC.

---

**MW-MOVE-5003:** Cross a water obstacle

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event is designed to teach a unit the site selection considerations, safety precautions, and team crossing techniques utilized in crossing a water obstacle.

**CONDITION:** Given a platoon size unit, in a mountainous environment, T/E, and MACK.

**STANDARD:** To safely and efficiently move personnel and equipment across the obstacle while maintaining security, and 100 percent accountability of personnel and equipment.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Employ individual safety precautions.
2. Utilize individual crossing preparations.
3. Employ team crossing techniques.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** MACK, two safety swimmers with life vests, and two throw bags.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** The safety swimmers should be WS-1 or higher.

---

**MW-MOVE-5004:** Cross a frozen-water obstacle

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event is designed to teach a unit how to determine ice stability, use the tools and special equipment required, how to select a safe route, how to cross the obstacle, the safety precautions involved, and how to conduct a self rescue.

**CONDITION:** Given a platoon size unit, in a cold weather environment, T/E, and selected items.

**STANDARD:** To safely and efficiently move personnel and equipment across the obstacle while maintaining security, and 100 percent accountability of personnel and equipment.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Employ individual safety precautions.
2. Cross the selected route.
3. Utilize self rescue techniques.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
3. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** Belay rope, ski poles or staff.

---

**MW-MOVE-5005:** Establish a bivouac site

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event teaches the unit how to select the correct site, establish defensive positions, dig in the living areas/trench plan, and how to live in a cold weather/snow covered environment.

**CONDITION:** Given a platoon size unit, in a cold weather environment, T/E, and MCWIK.

**STANDARD:** To provide security and survivability appropriate to the tactical and environmental situation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Organize personnel and equipment.
2. Conduct a site reconnaissance.
3. Establish local security.
4. Occupy the site.
5. Establish defensive positions.
6. Establish bivouac and living areas.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 31-70 Basic Cold Weather Operations
3. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** One MCWIK per four men.

---

**MW-MOVE-5006:** Conduct skijoring operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event is designed to teach the unit to quickly traverse snow covered terrain by being pulled behind a vehicle using ropes.

**CONDITION:** Given a platoon size unit, a vehicle, in a snow covered environment, and T/E.

**STANDARD:** To quickly traverse snow covered terrain being pulled behind a vehicle using ropes in a safe and efficient manner.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Employ skis.
2. Implement safety requirements for skijoring.
3. Prepare a vehicle for skijoring.
4. Implement skijoring techniques.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS
2. Marine Corps Mountain Warfare Nordic Ski Instruction Manual

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** Vehicle capable of traveling over the snow, a driver, a safety observer, a pair of skis with poles per man, and a static rope.

---

**MW-ANPK-5007:** Conduct a bivouac routine with a pack string

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Be able to retain the animals in a given area, while conducting bivouac routine. This is executed by the designated personnel; the required actions are conducted to care for the animals.

**CONDITION:** Given a platoon size unit, a pack string, and the required gear, under any condition.

**STANDARD:** To provide all-around security for personnel, equipment, and the pack string, according to the tactical situation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. State the selection criteria for selecting a bivouac site.
2. Describe the organization of a bivouac site.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-87842-127-0 Packin' In On Mules and Horses
  2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual
- 

**MW-ANPK-5008:** Employ a pack string

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This task is executed by leading a string of animals through any and all terrain that is indigenous to the pack animals.

**CONDITION:** Given a platoon size unit, in any environment, given pack animals, pack equipment, and the requirement to conduct pack string operations, under any condition.

**STANDARD:** To efficiently move equipment and personnel using pack animals.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify the necessary personnel for animal packing.
2. Identify the local pack species.
3. Identify the anatomy of a pack animal.
4. Select a pack animal for military operations.
5. Identify the tack required for animal packing.
6. Perform first aid on an injured animal
7. Perform maintenance on an animals hoof.
8. Saddle a pack animal.
9. Distribute the weight on a pack animal.
10. Secure a load to a pack animal.
11. Prepare a CASEVAC saddle.
12. Negotiate obstacles with pack animals.
13. Establish a bivouac site with a pack string.
14. Employ a pack animal.
15. Employ a pack string.
16. Plan for the employment of pack animals.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-87842-127-0 Packin' In On Mules and Horses
2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

---

**MW-CLMB-6001:** Negotiate a vertical to near vertical (5th class) obstacle

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event will allow the unit to climb moderate to vertical terrain using top rope lanes and/or one or all of the four types of fixed rope installations.

**CONDITION:** Given a company size unit, in a mountainous environment, a MACK, and T/E.

**STANDARD:** To safely and efficiently negotiate vertical to near vertical (5th class) terrain, utilizing top-rope techniques and/or fixed rope installations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Ascend a simple fixed rope.
2. Ascend a semi fixed rope.
3. Ascend a fixed rope.
4. Ascend a cable ladder.
5. Ascend a top rope.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
3. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
4. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** MACK

---

**MW-CLMB-6002:** Conduct a cliff assault

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** None

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**DESCRIPTION:** This event will allow the unit to conduct a cliff assault by conducting a cliff reconnaissance, utilizing the cliff assault planning considerations, and following the five phases of the cliff assault.

**CONDITION:** Given a platoon size unit, in a mountainous environment, a MACK, and T/E.

**STANDARD:** To secure an enemy objective accessible only by using climbing

skills, and utilizing the five phases of the cliff assault.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct a cliff reconnaissance.
2. Utilize the cliff assault planning considerations
3. Establish a cliff assault site.
4. Conduct a cliff assault.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
2. FM 31-72 Mountain Operations
3. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
4. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** MACK, and depending on the cliff head itself, special equipment for ice, and/or steep earth and 6-8 SKEDs for CASEVAC.

---

**MW-MOVE-6003:** Cross a frozen-water obstacle

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event is designed to teach a unit how to determine ice stability, use the tools and special equipment required, how to select a safe route, how to cross the obstacle, the safety precautions involved, and how to conduct a self rescue.

**CONDITION:** Given a platoon size unit, in a cold weather environment, T/E, and selected items.

**STANDARD:** To safely and efficiently move personnel and equipment while maintaining 100 percent accountability of personnel and equipment.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Employ individual safety precautions.
2. Utilize self rescue techniques.
3. Cross the selected route.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
2. FM 31-72 Mountain Operations
3. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

EQUIPMENT: Belay rope, ski poles or staff.

---

MW-MOVE-6004: Cross a water obstacle

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

DESCRIPTION: This event is designed to teach a unit the site selection considerations, safety precautions, and team crossing techniques utilized in crossing a water obstacle.

CONDITION: Given a platoon size unit, in a mountainous environment, T/E, and MACK.

STANDARD: To safely and efficiently move personnel and equipment while maintain security and 100 percent accountability of personnel and equipment.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Employ individual safety precautions.
2. Utilize individual crossing preparations.
3. Employ team crossing techniques.

REFERENCES:

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
3. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
4. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

EQUIPMENT: MACK, two safety swimmers with life vests, one safety line, and two throw bags.

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: The safety swimmers should be WS-1 or higher.

---

MW-MOVE-6005: Establish a bivouac site

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

DESCRIPTION: This event teaches the unit how to select the correct site, establish defensive positions, dig in the living areas/trench plan and, how to live in a cold weather/snow covered environment.

CONDITION: Given a platoon size unit, in a cold weather environment, T/E, and a MCWIK.

**STANDARD:** To provide security and survivability appropriate to the tactical and environmental situation.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Organize personnel and equipment.
2. Conduct a site reconnaissance.
3. Establish local security.
4. Occupy the site.
5. Establish defensive positions
6. Establish bivouac and living areas.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 31-70 Basic Cold Weather Operations
3. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** One MCWIK per four men.

---

**MW-ANPK-6006:** Execute a movement utilizing a pack string

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This task is executed by leading a string of animals through any and all terrain that is indigenous to the pack animals.

**CONDITION:** Given a platoon size unit, in any environment and given a pack string, pack equipment, and the need to conduct pack string operations under any condition with the proper equipment.

**STANDARD:** To move supplies and equipment, while providing security for the pack string, in support of subsequent combat operations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Determine load requirements for animals.
2. Organize Marines, animals, and equipment for movement.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

|              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| MW-ANPK-6007 | MW-AVAL-1024 | MW-ANPK-4007 |
| MW-ANPK-4006 | MW-ANPK-3001 | MW-ANPK-2001 |
| MW-ANPK-1015 | MW-ANPK-1014 | MW-ANPK-1013 |
| MW-ANPK-1012 | MW-ANPK-1011 | MW-ANPK-1001 |
| MW-ANPK-1010 | MW-ANPK-1009 | MW-ANPK-1008 |
| MW-ANPK-1007 | MW-ANPK-1006 | MW-ANPK-1005 |
| MW-ANPK-1004 | MW-ANPK-1003 | MW-ANPK-1002 |
| MW-AVAL-1026 | MW-AVAL-1025 | MW-ANPK-5007 |

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-87842-127-0 Packing' In On Mules and Horses

2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

---

**MW-ANPK-6007:** Conduct a bivouac routine with a pack string

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Be able to retain the animals in a given area, while conducting bivouac routine. This is executed by the designated personnel; the required actions are conducted to care for the animals.

**CONDITION:** Given a platoon size unit, a pack string, and the required gear, under any condition.

**STANDARD:** To select and establish a bivouac site that provides all-around security for personnel, equipment, and the pack string.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Determine the selection criteria for a bivouac site.
2. Organize the bivouac site.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

|              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| MW-ANPK-5008 | MW-AVAL-1024 | MW-ANPK-4007 |
| MW-ANPK-4006 | MW-ANPK-3001 | MW-ANPK-2001 |
| MW-ANPK-1015 | MW-ANPK-1014 | MW-ANPK-1013 |
| MW-ANPK-1012 | MW-ANPK-1011 | MW-ANPK-1010 |
| MW-ANPK-1009 | MW-ANPK-1008 | MW-ANPK-1007 |
| MW-ANPK-1006 | MW-ANPK-1005 | MW-ANPK-1004 |
| MW-ANPK-1003 | MW-ANPK-1002 | MW-ANPK-1001 |
| MW-AVAL-1026 | MW-AVAL-1025 | MW-ANPK-5007 |

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-87842-127-0 Packin' In On Mules and Horses
  2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual
- 

**MW-CLMB-7001:** Conduct a cliff assault

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event will allow the unit to conduct a cliff assault by conducting a cliff reconnaissance, utilizing the cliff assault planning considerations, and following the five phases of the cliff assault.

**CONDITION:** Given an infantry battalion, in a mountainous environment, a MACK, T/E.

**STANDARD:** To secure an enemy objective, utilizing the cliff assault planning considerations, and following the five phases of the cliff assault.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct a cliff reconnaissance.

2. Utilize the cliff assault planning considerations.
3. Establish a cliff assault site.
4. Conduct a cliff assault.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
2. FM 31-72 Mountain Operations
3. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
4. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** MACK, and depending on the cliff head itself, special equipment for ice and/or steep earth and 6-8 SKEDs for CASEVAC.

MCWO T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

MOUNTAIN COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS

INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

|   | <u>PARAGRAPH</u> | <u>PAGE</u> |
|---|------------------|-------------|
| PURPOSE . . . . .                               | 4000             | 4-2         |
| ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES . . . . .                  | 4001             | 4-2         |
| INDIVIDUAL CORE CAPABILITIES . . . . .          | 4002             | 4-3         |
| INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS BY LEVEL . . . . .   | 4003             | 4-4         |
| 1000-LEVEL INDIVIDUAL TRAINING EVENTS . . . . . | 4004             | 4-9         |
| 2000-LEVEL INDIVIDUAL TRAINING EVENTS . . . . . | 4005             | 4-61        |

MCWO T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

MOUNTAIN COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS

INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

**4000. PURPOSE.** This chapter includes all individual training events taught at the MCMWTC. An individual event is an event that a trained Marine would accomplish in the execution of MCWO Mission Essential Tasks (METs). These events are linked to a Service-Level Mission Essential Task. This linkage tailor's individual and collective training for the selected MET. Each event is composed of an individual event title, condition, standard, performance steps, support requirements, and references. Accomplishment and proficiency level required is determined by the event standard.

**4001. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES**

1. T&R events are coded for ease of reference. Each event has up to 4-4-4-character identifier. The first four characters represent the Community (MW for basic Mountain Warfare training or MWI for instructor training).

2. The second up to four characters represent the functional or duty area.

ANPK - Animal Packing  
AVAL - Avalanche  
CLEQ - Clothing and Equipment  
CLMB - Climbing  
ENG - Engineer  
ENVR - Environment  
HRST - Helicopter Rope Suspension Technician  
MOVE - Movement  
SERE - Survival and Evasion  
TRST - Tactical Rope Suspension Technician

3. The last four characters represent the level (1000-2000) and sequence (1001-1999) of the event. The MCWO individual training events are separated into two levels:

1000 - Core Skills  
2000 - Core Plus Skills

#### 4002. INDIVIDUAL CORE CAPABILITIES

##### **Special Skills (classified as High Risk Training)**

**Rappel Master (RM)** (NCO or above). This Marine is not a TRST but has the basic TRST skills necessary to manage rappelling on a tower only. This training qualification is used primarily at MCRD's.

**Tactical Rope Suspension Technician (TRST)**. This Marine has the skills necessary to establish all rope systems used in tactical operations. This includes high tension rope installations, rappelling, water obstacle crossing, fixed ropes on steep earth, and balance climbing and top-roping. The Marine can also serve as a number 2 climber for a lead climber (assault climber) TRST who are NCO or above are certified as Rappel Masters to conduct rappelling operations on a tower. TRST is the minimum certification for NCOs and above to conduct TRST training on vertical to near vertical terrain for rappelling, top roping, and fixed ropes.

**Assault Climber (AC)**. A TRST who can also lead climb vertical to near vertical terrain.

**Urban Assault Climber (UC)**. A TRST who can also lead climb vertical to near vertical urban obstacles.

**Scout Skier (SS)**. This Marine is qualified as a Military Skier (MS). He possesses the skill to negotiate arduous snow covered and avalanche producing terrain on skis. He has basic tracking skills, and avalanche skills.

**Mountain Leader (ML)** (Company grade officers and SNCO's). The Summer Mountain Leader is a qualified TRST and an Assault Climber. He is skilled in alpine movement and glacier travel. The Winter Mountain Leader is a Scout Skier and certified as a Military Skier. He is skilled in all aspects of warfighting in a cold weather and snow covered environments. The primary role of the Mountain leader is to advise and plan operations in mountain or cold weather operations.

**Mountain Warfare Instructor (MWI)**. Instructors (Sgt-MSgt) at MWTC who are both summer and Winter Mountain Leaders, FSIC certified and have received Wilderness First Responder medical training. They also receive advanced Alpine, Rock, Avalanche and Ski Training as part of a tiered instructor progression.

**Helicopter Rope Suspension Technician (HRST)**. NCOs and above who successfully complete the HRST Masters Course. A certified and current HRST master is responsible for the training of personnel, as well as direct supervision of all HRST operations. See MCO 3500.42A.

Prior to the conduct of all High Risk training, qualified personnel will be assigned in writing by the Commanding Officer of the unit conducting training.

4003. INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS BY LEVEL

| EVENT        | TITLE  | PAGE |
|--------------|--|------|
|              | <b>1000-LEVEL INDIVIDUAL TRAINING EVENTS</b>               |      |
| MW-ANPK-1001 | Identify the necessary personnel for animal packing        | 4-9  |
| MW-ANPK-1002 | Identify the local pack species                            | 4-9  |
| MW-ANPK-1003 | Identify the anatomy of a pack animal                      | 4-10 |
| MW-ANPK-1004 | Select a pack animal for military operations               | 4-10 |
| MW-ANPK-1005 | Identify the tack required for animal packing              | 4-11 |
| MW-ANPK-1006 | Perform first aid on an injured animal                     | 4-12 |
| MW-ANPK-1007 | Perform maintenance on an animals hoof                     | 4-13 |
| MW-ANPK-1008 | Saddle a pack animal                                       | 4-14 |
| MW-ANPK-1009 | Distribute the weight on a pack animal                     | 4-15 |
| MW-ANPK-1010 | Secure a load to a pack animal                             | 4-15 |
| MW-ANPK-1011 | Prepare a CASEVAC saddle                                   | 4-16 |
| MW-ANPK-1012 | Negotiate obstacles with pack animals                      | 4-17 |
| MW-ANPK-1013 | Establish a bivouac site with a pack string                | 4-18 |
| MW-ANPK-1014 | Employ a pack animal                                       | 4-19 |
| MW-ANPK-1015 | Employ a pack string                                       | 4-20 |
| MW-AVAL-1024 | Assess avalanche terrain                                   | 4-20 |
| MW-AVAL-1025 | Conduct an avalanche search                                | 4-21 |
| MW-AVAL-1026 | Perform duties as part of a avalanche search member        | 4-22 |
| MW-CLEQ-1031 | Employ personal equipment                                  | 4-23 |
| MW-CLEQ-1032 | Pack for movement  | 4-23 |
| MW-CLEQ-1033 | Employ general purpose mountaineering equipment            | 4-24 |
| MW-CLEQ-1034 | Employ the Marine Cold Weather Infantry Kit (MCWIK) system | 4-24 |
| MW-CLEQ-1035 | Employ the squad tent system                               | 4-25 |
| MW-CLEQ-1036 | Maintain snow mobility equipment                           | 4-26 |
| MW-CLEQ-1037 | Employ weapons   | 4-26 |
| MW-CLEQ-1038 | Employ optics  | 4-27 |
| MW-CLEQ-1039 | Employ NBC equipment                                       | 4-27 |
| MW-CLMB-1042 | Perform basic belay techniques                             | 4-28 |
| MW-CLMB-1043 | Climb terrain  | 4-29 |
| MW-CLMB-1044 | Climb using a top rope                                     | 4-29 |
| MW-CLMB-1045 | Climb using fixed ropes                                    | 4-30 |
| MW-CLMB-1046 | Climb a specialized ladder                                 | 4-31 |
| MW-CLMB-1047 | Negotiate steep terrain                                    | 4-32 |
| MW-CLMB-1048 | Negotiate snow/ice covered terrain                         | 4-32 |
| MW-ENVR-1067 | Overcome leadership challenges                             | 4-33 |
| MW-ENVR-1068 | Implement the principles of "BE SAFE MARINE"               | 4-34 |
| MW-ENVR-1071 | Assess the weather   | 4-34 |
| MW-ENVR-1072 | Apply snow-covered concealment techniques                  | 4-35 |

|              |   |      |
|--------------|---|------|
| MW-HRST-1073 | Conduct a fast rope descent   | 4-35 |
| MW-HRST-1074 | Conduct a Special Purpose Insertion/Extraction (SPIE)                       | 4-36 |
| MW-MOVE-1076 | Navigate to an objective utilizing expedient navigational aids and methods. | 4-36 |
| MW-MOVE-1077 | Move over rough terrain   | 4-37 |
| MW-MOVE-1078 | Employ snow shoes   | 4-37 |
| MW-MOVE-1079 | Employ ski's  | 4-38 |
| MW-MOVE-1080 | Negotiate a water obstacle  | 4-39 |
| MW-MOVE-1081 | Negotiate a snow/ice covered water obstacle                                 | 4-39 |
| MW-MOVE-1082 | Bivouac in a snow covered environment                                       | 4-40 |
| MW-MOVE-1083 | Evacuate a casualty   | 4-41 |
| MW-MOVE-1084 | Move over glaciated terrain   | 4-41 |
| MW-MOVE-1085 | Operate a four-wheel drive vehicle  | 4-42 |
| MW-MOVE-1086 | Perform skijoring   | 4-43 |
| MW-MOVE-1087 | Employ a sled   | 4-43 |
| MW-MOVE-1088 | Operate an over the snow tracked vehicle                                    | 4-44 |
| MW-SERE-1092 | Prepare for survival  | 4-45 |
| MW-SERE-1093 | Construct a personal survival kit   | 4-45 |
| MW-SERE-1094 | Construct survival fires  | 4-46 |
| MW-SERE-1095 | Procure water   | 4-46 |
| MW-SERE-1096 | Construct an expedient survival shelter                                     | 4-47 |
| MW-SERE-1097 | Acquire game  | 4-47 |
| MW-SERE-1098 | Procure fish  | 4-48 |
| MW-SERE-1099 | Construct expedient survival implements                                     | 4-48 |
| MW-SERE-1100 | Subsist on plants   | 4-49 |
| MW-SERE-1101 | Subsist on insects  | 4-49 |
| MW-SERE-1102 | Prepare food for consumption  | 4-50 |
| MW-SERE-1103 | Apply survival medicine techniques  | 4-50 |
| MW-SERE-1104 | Navigate in a survival situation  | 4-51 |
| MW-SERE-1105 | Perform survival signaling  | 4-51 |
| MW-SERE-1106 | Evade capture   | 4-52 |
| MW-SERE-1107 | Perform tracking  | 4-52 |
| MW-SERE-1108 | Facilitate recovery   | 4-53 |
| MW-TRST-1111 | Employ ropes  | 4-53 |
| MW-TRST-1112 | Tie knots   | 4-54 |
| MW-TRST-1113 | Tie hitches   | 4-55 |
| MW-TRST-1114 | Tie an improvised harness   | 4-55 |
| MW-TRST-1115 | Employ natural protection   | 4-56 |
| MW-TRST-1116 | Construct a simple anchor   | 4-56 |
| MW-TRST-1117 | Employ a rope mechanical advantage system                                   | 4-57 |
| MW-TRST-1118 | Cross a high-tension rope installation                                      | 4-58 |
| MW-TRST-1119 | Operate a raising/lowering system   | 4-59 |
| MW-TRST-1120 | Conduct a rappel  | 4-59 |

| EVENT        | TITLE  | PAGE |
|--------------|--|------|
|              | <b>2000-LEVEL INDIVIDUAL TRAINING EVENTS</b>                             |      |
| MW-ANPK-2001 | Plan for the employment of pack animals                                  | 4-61 |
| MW-AVAL-2006 | Assess avalanche terrain   | 4-61 |
| MW-AVAL-2008 | Manage an unstable slope   | 4-62 |
| MW-AVAL-2009 | Perform duties as the avalanche search site commander                    | 4-63 |
| MW-AVAL-2010 | Operate an electronic search device for a single burial                  | 4-64 |
| MW-CLEQ-2014 | Manage a Marine Assault Climber Kit (MACK)                               | 4-64 |
| MW-CLEQ-2015 | Manage snow mobility equipment   | 4-65 |
| MW-CLEQ-2016 | Manage a HRST Kit  | 4-66 |
| MW-CLMB-2022 | Manage a balance climbing site   | 4-66 |
| MW-CLMB-2023 | Manage a top-rope site   | 4-67 |
| MW-CLMB-2024 | Perform advanced belay techniques  | 4-68 |
| MW-CLMB-2025 | Lead climb   | 4-69 |
| MW-CLMB-2026 | Lead climb using aid climbing techniques                                 | 4-69 |
| MW-CLMB-2027 | Perform a vertical rescue  | 4-70 |
| MW-CLMB-2028 | Lead climb steep earth   | 4-71 |
| MW-CLMB-2029 | Manage a fixed rope installation   | 4-72 |
| MW-CLMB-2030 | Employ specialized ladders   | 4-72 |
| MW-CLMB-2031 | Record cliff data  | 4-73 |
| MW-CLMB-2032 | Climb snow/ice   | 4-74 |
| MW-CLMB-2034 | Climb a vertical structure   | 4-74 |
| MW-ENVR-2041 | Resolve leadership challenges  | 4-75 |
| MW-ENVR-2042 | Assess operational risk  | 4-76 |
| MW-ENVR-2043 | Field forecast weather   | 4-76 |
| MW-ENVR-2044 | Determine terrain accessibility  | 4-77 |
| MW-ENG-2052  | Determine ice covered water obstacle accessibility                       | 4-77 |
| MW-ENG-2053  | Conduct a snow/ice covered road route reconnaissance                     | 4-78 |
| MW-ENG-2054  | Construct field fortifications in a mountainous/cold weather environment | 4-78 |
| MW-ENG-2055  | Construct snow/ice obstacles   | 4-79 |
| MW-ENG-2056  | Employ explosive devices in an arctic environment                        | 4-80 |
| MW-ENG-2057  | Conduct an ice breach  | 4-80 |
| MW-ENG-2058  | Conduct avalanche initiation utilizing demolitions                       | 4-81 |
| MW-ENG-2059  | Establish semi-permanent rope installations (Rigging)                    | 4-82 |
| MW-MOVE-2067 | Navigate in the mountains  | 4-83 |
| MW-MOVE-2068 | Operate an altimeter   | 4-84 |
| MW-MOVE-2069 | Employ ski's   | 4-84 |
| MW-MOVE-2070 | Employ a sled  | 4-85 |
| MW-MOVE-2071 | Manage snow covered bivouac site   | 4-86 |
| MW-MOVE-2072 | Manage a water obstacle crossing site                                    | 4-86 |

|               |  |       |
|---------------|--|-------|
| MW-MOVE-2073  | Manage a snow/ice covered water obstacle crossing site                 | 4-87  |
| MW-MOVE-2074  | Lead a group over glaciated terrain                                    | 4-88  |
| MW-MOVE-2075  | Employ an over-the-snow tracked vehicle                                | 4-88  |
| MW-MOVE-2076  | Move over glaciated terrain  | 4-89  |
| MW-MOVE-2077  | Lead a group through an alpine environment                             | 4-90  |
| MW-TRST-2103  | Employ ropes   | 4-90  |
| MW-TRST-2104  | Tie knots  | 4-91  |
| MW-TRST-2105  | Tie hitches  | 4-92  |
| MW-TRST-2106  | Employ rock protection   | 4-92  |
| MW-TRST-2107  | Construct an anchor  | 4-93  |
| MW-TRST-2108  | Manage an anchor site  | 4-94  |
| MW-TRST-2109  | Conduct a rappel   | 4-94  |
| MW-TRST-2110  | Manage a rappel site   | 4-95  |
| MW-TRST-2111  | Tension a rope using mechanical advantage                              | 4-96  |
| MW-TRST-2112  | Employ a height-gaining device   | 4-97  |
| MW-TRST-2113  | Manage a high-tension rope installation                                | 4-97  |
| MW-TRST-2114  | Manage a raising/lowering system                                       | 4-98  |
| MW-TRST-2115  | Employ steep earth protection  | 4-99  |
| MW-TRST-2116  | Employ snow/ice equipment  | 4-99  |
| MW-HRST-2121  | Conduct a HRST brief   | 4-100 |
| MW-HRST-2122  | Rig a simulated helicopter tower for fast rope operations              | 4-100 |
| MW-HRST-2123  | Manage a simulated helicopter tower for fast rope operations           | 4-101 |
| MW-HRST-2124  | Rig a helicopter for fast roping                                       | 4-102 |
| MW-HRST-2125  | Manage helicopter fast rope operations                                 | 4-102 |
| MW-HRST-2126  | Rig a helicopter for rappelling  | 4-103 |
| MW-HRST-2127  | Manage helicopter rappelling operations                                | 4-104 |
| MW-HRST-2128  | Rig a helicopter for SPIE  | 4-104 |
| MW-HRST-2129  | Manage SPIE operations   | 4-105 |
| MW-HRST-2130  | Rig a helicopter for a cable ladder                                    | 4-106 |
| MW-HRST-2131  | Manage helicopter cable ladder operations                              | 4-107 |
| MW-HRST-2132  | Perform the duties of a Safety Insert Officer (SIO)                    | 4-107 |
| MWI-ENVR-2203 | Develop operational risk management for mountain/cold weather training | 4-108 |
| MWI-ENVR-2204 | Issue a local weather forecast   | 4-108 |
| MWI-MOVE-2206 | Operate an over-the-snow grooming vehicle                              | 4-109 |
| MWI-MOVE-2207 | Conduct crevasse rescue training                                       | 4-110 |
| MWI-MOVE-2208 | Employ ski's   | 4-110 |
| MWI-MOVE-2209 | Conduct ski instruction (MS)   | 4-111 |
| MWI-MOVE-2210 | Conduct ski instruction (MSI)  | 4-112 |
| MWI-AVAL-2011 | Operate an electronic search device multiple burial                    | 4-113 |
| MWI-AVAL-2012 | Collect avalanche data   | 4-114 |
| MWI-AVAL-2213 | Forecast avalanche hazard  | 4-114 |
| MWI-AVAL-2214 | Conduct avalanche control  | 4-115 |

NAVMC DIR 3500.108  
17 Jul 06

|               |                          |       |
|---------------|--------------------------|-------|
| MWI-TRST-2215 | Employ rock protection   | 4-116 |
| MWI-CLMB-2216 | Lead a multi-pitch climb | 4-117 |
| MWI-CLMB-2218 | Lead climb snow/ice      | 4-117 |

#### 4004. 1000-LEVEL INDIVIDUAL TRAINING EVENTS

**MW-ANPK-1001:** Identify the necessary personnel for animal packing

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, the requirement to conduct animal packing, a list of personnel, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Ensuring all required pack train personnel are assigned to a billet and properly trained so the pack string can effectively support combat operations in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify the duties of the pack master.
2. Identify the duties of the assistant pack master or wrangler.
3. Identify the duties of the ferrier.
4. Identify the duties of the handler.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual
2. UC303D34 Manual of Pack Transportation, U.S. Army 1917

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Classroom large enough to accommodate 72 students.

**MATERIAL:** Power point projector, projector screen, and computer

---

**MW-ANPK-1002:** Identify the local pack species

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a list of pack animals, in any environment, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Ensuring local animals are one or more of the nine pack species found around the world in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify the regions that a mule is found.
2. Identify the regions that a horse is found.
3. Identify the regions that a donkey is found.
4. Identify the regions that a camel is found.

5. Identify the regions that a llama is found.
6. Identify the regions that a ox is found.
7. Identify the regions that a dog is found.
8. Identify the regions that a reindeer is found
9. Identify the regions that a elephant is found.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual
2. UC303D34 Manual of Pack Transportation, U.S. Army 1917

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Classroom large enough to accommodate 72 students.

**MATERIAL:** Power point projector, projector screen, and computer

---

**MW-ANPK-1003:** Identify the anatomy of a pack animal

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, an anatomical diagram of a pack animal, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Correctly identifying the five main parts of a given pack animal, the frog and its purpose, in accordance with references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify the five main parts of a pack animal.
2. Identify the purpose of the frog.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-87842-127-0 Packin In On Mules and Horses
2. 006-270139-8 Book of Horses, A Complete Medical Reference Guide for Horses and Foals
3. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual
4. OHS, Oklahoma Horseshoeing School Instruction Manual
5. Elements Of Farrier Science

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Classroom large enough to accommodate 72 students.

**MATERIAL:** Turn chart, power point projector, projector screen, and computer

---

**MW-ANPK-1004:** Select a pack animal for military operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, a group of pack animals, the requirement to conduct military operations, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Determining which animal has good conformation, which has poor conformation, and selects the required pack string to accomplish the assigned mission, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify the signs of poor conformation.
2. Identify the signs of good conformation.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

MW-ANPK-1001

MW-ANPK-1003

MW-ANPK-1002

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual
2. UC303D34 Manual of Pack Transportation, U.S. Army 1917

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Classroom large enough to accommodate 72 students. A barn and stable to house and accommodate pack animals.

**EQUIPMENT:** Pack animal, corrals, and hitching rails

**MATERIAL:** Turn chart, power point projector, projector screen, and computer

---

**MW-ANPK-1005:** Identify the tack required for animal packing

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, a variety of saddles and the other tack required for animal packing, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Including the three saddles and associated tack required to pack an animal for pack string operations in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify the nomenclature of the western saddle.
2. Identify the nomenclature of the sawbuck saddle.
3. Identify the nomenclature of the decker saddle.

4. Identify the advantages of using native pack equipment.
5. Identify the disadvantages of using native pack equipment.
6. Identify the mule halter.
7. Identify a mantee (also mantie).
8. Identify a lash line.
9. Identify a mantee rope.
10. Identify a pannier.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

MW-ANPK-1002

MW-ANPK-1004

MW-ANPK-1003

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-87842-127-0 Packin' In On Mules and Horses
2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual
3. UC303D34 Manual of Pack Transportation, U.S. Army 1917

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Classroom large enough to accommodate 72 students. A tack room to store tack.

**MATERIAL:** Western saddle, decker saddle, sawbuck saddle, mantee, mantee rope, lash line, and pannier.

---

**MW-ANPK-1006:** Perform first aid on an injured animal

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, the requirement to conduct military operations with pack animals, an injured pack animal, an animal First Aid Kit, required gear, under any condition, and with the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Identifying an illness, or injury to a pack animal, and render first aid to the ill, or injured animal, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify the required items in an animal first aid kit.
2. Identify common injuries below the knee.
3. Identify common injuries above the knee.
4. Identify thrush.
5. Demonstrate how to administer first aid.
6. Demonstrate how to treat an animal that is hemorrhaging.
7. Identify the signs and symptoms of colic and demonstrate methods of treating colic.
8. Identify the signs and symptoms of founder and how to treat it.
9. Identify the four ways to destroy stock.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

MW-ANPK-1002

MW-ANPK-1004

MW-ANPK-1003

**REFERENCES:**

1. 006-270139-8 Book of Horses, A Complete Medical Reference Guide for Horses and Foals
2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual
3. OHS, Oklahoma Horseshoeing School Instruction Manual
4. UC303D34 Manual of Pack Transportation, U.S. Army 1917

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Classroom large enough to accommodate 72 students, barn, stable, office, and a tack room.

**MATERIAL:** Pack animal, equine 1st aid kit

---

**MW-ANPK-1007:** Perform maintenance on an animals hoof

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, a pack animal, the required gear, the requirement to shoe a pack animal, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Properly caring for and maintaining an animal's hooves and properly re-shoeing if necessary, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Execute the steps taken for an animal that has thrown a rear shoe.
2. Execute the steps taken for an animal that has thrown a front shoe.
3. Describe the proper hoof angle for a horse.
4. Describe the proper hoof angle for a mule.
5. Shoe a horse.
6. Shoe a mule.
7. Identify the common injuries to the hoof.
8. Identify the common diseases of the hoof.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

MW-ANPK-1006

MW-ANPK-1003

**REFERENCES:**

1. 006-270139-8 Book of Horses, A Complete Medical Reference Guide for Horses and Foals
2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual
3. OHS, Oklahoma Horseshoeing School Instruction Manual
4. Elements Of Farrier Science

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Blacksmith shop, barn, stable, and padded concrete paddock with hitching rails.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** The instructor that is teaching this period of instruction is required to have attended and completed a horse shoeing school. He should be a basic horseshoer at a minimum.

---

**MW-ANPK-1008:** Saddle a pack animal

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, given a pack animal, pack saddle and pack pad, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** With a packsaddle and pack pad in a time limit of 15 minutes, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Acquire a pack animal.
2. Catch a pack animal.
3. Groom a pack animal.
4. Place saddle pad on the animal with the front of the pad at the center of the shoulder.
5. Place saddle on the animal.
6. Pull the rear britchen assembly over the hindquarters pulling the tail over the britchen pad.
7. Feed the front Latigo through the front cincha ring tightening the cincha up on the saddle.
8. Feed the rear Latigo through the rear cincha ring tightening the cincha up on the saddle.
9. Fasten the breast strap on the front of the saddle.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

MW-ANPK-1001

MW-ANPK-1002

MW-ANPK-1007

MW-ANPK-1004

MW-ANPK-1005

MW-ANPK-1003

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-87842-127-0 Packin' In On Mules and Horses
2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual
3. UC303D34 Manual of Pack Transportation, U.S. Army 1917

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Classroom large enough for 72 students, barn, stable, and tack room

**MATERIAL:** Pack animal, pack saddle pad, pack saddle, and halter

---

**MW-ANPK-1009:** Distribute the weight on a pack animal

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, a pack animal, pack equipment, a load to be distributed, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Distributing weight evenly, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Saddle the pack animal.
2. Place loads inside the panniers.
3. Weigh the loads to ensure that they are within five pounds.
4. Place the loads on the animal.
5. Rock the load lightly simulating the movement of the animal at a walk.
6. Look at the top of the panniers to ensure that the loads have settled evenly.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

MW-ANPK-1001

MW-ANPK-1002

MW-ANPK-1003

MW-ANPK-1008

MW-ANPK-1005

MW-ANPK-1007

MW-ANPK-1004

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-87842-127-0 Packin' In On Mules and Horses
2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual
3. UC303D34 Manual of Pack Transportation, U.S. Army 1917

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Classroom large enough to accommodate 72 students, barn, and stables.

**MATERIAL:** Pack animal, pack saddle pad, pack saddle, halter, panniers, and a load

---

**MW-ANPK-1010:** Secure a load to a pack animal

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, a pack animal, the required gear, the requirement to pack an animal, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Properly securing the load by tying the box hitch in a time limit of 15 minutes, properly securing the load by tying the barrel hitch in a time limit of 15 minutes, properly securing the load by tying the basket hitch in a time limit of 15 minutes, and properly securing the load by tying the mantee, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Properly tie the box hitch.
2. Properly tie the barrel hitch.
3. Properly tie the mantee.
4. Properly tie the basket hitch.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

|              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| MW-ANPK-1001 | MW-ANPK-1002 | MW-ANPK-1003 |
| MW-ANPK-1009 | MW-ANPK-1005 | MW-ANPK-1008 |
| MW-ANPK-1004 |              |              |

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-87842-127-0 Packin' In On Mules and Horses
2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Classroom large enough to accommodate 72 students, a barn for the animals, and hitching rails.

**MATERIAL:** Mantee, mantee rope, and a load for the animal

---

**MW-ANPK-1011:** Prepare a CASEVAC saddle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, a pack animal, the required gear, the requirement to conduct a CASEVAC, under any condition, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Within a time limit of ten minutes, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Saddle a pack animal with a sawbuck saddle.
2. Tie a Mantee rope to the front crossbuck with an over-the-object clove hitch.
3. On each side of the rope, tie a middle of the line figure eight loop, (This is to be used as stirrups).
4. Pull the lash cincha under the crossbuck's from the front to the back so that the ring is under the front crossbuck.
5. Wrap the lash line around the front and rear crossbuck's.
6. When there is approx. 8 feet of rope remaining, wrap the rope behind the

- front crossbuck on the first wraps.  
7. Tie the rope off using a clove hitch.  
8. Pull the pigtail so that the knot is underneath the seat.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

|              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| MW-ANPK-1001 | MW-ANPK-1002 | MW-ANPK-1008 |
| MW-ANPK-1004 | MW-ANPK-1005 | MW-ANPK-1003 |

**REFERENCE:**

1. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** 1. Classroom large enough to accommodate 72 students  
2. Barn 3. Stable

**MATERIAL:** Pack animal, pack saddle pad, sawbuck saddle, mantee rope, and lash line.

---

**MW-ANPK-1012:** Negotiate obstacles with pack animals

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, a pack animal, pack equipment, the requirement to employ animals, in any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Ensuring all obstacles are negotiated without endangering the animal or the load in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Lead a string of mules through the river at a 45 deg angle facing upstream.
2. Untie a string of mules and lead them one at a time at a 45 deg angle across the river.
3. Push the mules across the river and catch them on the other side.
4. Slow down the lead animal coming out of washes so as not to drag the last animal as it is slowly going in.
5. On a switchback, slow down the lead animal, so you do not pull your tail animal off the hill.
6. When stuck at impassible obstacles stop and turn your lead animal around.
7. Turn each animal so that your last animal becomes your first animal.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

|              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| MW-ANPK-1001 | MW-ANPK-1002 | MW-ANPK-1003 |
| MW-ANPK-1010 | MW-ANPK-1005 | MW-ANPK-1008 |
| MW-ANPK-1009 | MW-ANPK-1004 |              |

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-87842-127-0 Packin' In On Mules and Horses
2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**MATERIAL:** Loaded pack string

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** The training area that is needed includes mountain trails with switchbacks, wooded areas to move stock through, rivers, creeks, and gullies.

---

**MW-ANPK-1013:** Establish a bivouac site with a pack string

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, a pack string, the required gear, the requirement to establish a bivouac site, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** That provides all-around security for personnel, equipment, the pack string, and supports the animals need for food, water, and picket lines, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Establish a reconnaissance of an area that provides cover, concealment, foliage, water, and picket line anchors.
2. Move in and establish the security element.
3. Bring in the pack animals one at a time.
4. Unload the first animal.
5. Utilize the lash line from the first animal to establish a picket line.
6. Unsaddle the animal and stage its gear uphill and behind the animals place on the picket line.
7. Groom the animal, brushing its hair against the grain so that it dries; picking its feet to check for foreign objects, and thrown shoes.
8. Take the animal out to graze.
9. Take the animal to a water source.
10. Execute the proper sequence to water and graze the animal.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

|              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| MW-ANPK-1001 | MW-ANPK-1002 | MW-ANPK-1003 |
| MW-ANPK-1004 | MW-ANPK-1005 | MW-ANPK-1012 |
| MW-ANPK-1008 | MW-ANPK-1009 | MW-ANPK-1010 |
| MW-ANPK-1011 | MW-ANPK-1007 |              |

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-87842-127-0 Packin' In On Mules and Horses
2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Classroom large enough to accommodate 72 students; a barn, stable, and anchors for picket lines as well.

---

**MW-ANPK-1014:** Employ a pack animal

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSgt, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSgt, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, a pack animal, pack equipment, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To move a required load to a pre-determined destination, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Evacuate a casualty, simulated or actual, in a tactical environment, utilizing a pack animal.
2. Conduct a tactical movement utilizing combat formations with a pack animal.
3. Conduct a tactical re-supply from a battalion logistical operation center to a company forward operating base utilizing a pack animal.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

|              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| MW-ANPK-1001 | MW-ANPK-1002 | MW-ANPK-1003 |
| MW-ANPK-1004 | MW-ANPK-1005 | MW-ANPK-1006 |
| MW-ANPK-1015 | MW-ANPK-1008 | MW-ANPK-1009 |
| MW-ANPK-1010 | MW-ANPK-1011 | MW-ANPK-1012 |
| MW-ANPK-1013 | MW-ANPK-1007 |              |

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-87842-127-0 Packin' In On Mules and Horses
2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual
3. UC303D34 Manual of Pack Transportation, U.S. Army 1917

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** The facilities that are needed include a classroom large enough for 72 students, a barn, a pasture, and a tack room.

17 Jul 06

**MATERIAL:** Pack animal, pack saddle pad, pack saddle, mantee rope, lash line, mantee, and halter

**MW-ANPK-1015:** Employ a pack string

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, pack animals, pack equipment, the requirement to conduct pack string operations, under any condition, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To safely and efficiently move personnel, equipment, and supplies to a predetermined destination, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify the organization of a re-supply with a pack string.
2. Identify the methods of conducting re-supply with a pack string.
3. Identify the organization of a casualty evacuation with a pack animal.
4. Identify the methods of conducting casualty evacuations with a pack animal.
5. Identify the methods of conducting tactical movements with a pack string.
6. Identify the organization of a tactical movement with a pack string.
7. Identify the methods of conducting a tactical bivouac with a pack string.
8. Identify the organization of a tactical bivouac with a pack string.
9. Identify the immediate actions for pack string operations.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

|              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| MW-ANPK-1001 | MW-ANPK-1002 | MW-ANPK-1003 |
| MW-ANPK-1004 | MW-ANPK-1005 | MW-ANPK-1006 |
| MW-ANPK-1012 | MW-ANPK-1008 | MW-ANPK-1009 |
| MW-ANPK-1010 | MW-ANPK-1011 | MW-ANPK-1013 |
| MW-ANPK-1007 |              |              |

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-87842-127-0 Packin' In On Mules and Horses
2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** A classroom that is large enough for 72 students is required.

**MW-AVAL-1024:** Assess avalanche terrain

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a snow covered mountainous environment, a MCWIK, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Determining the avalanche hazard, evaluating the hazard, and selecting the best course of action to mitigate the hazard, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify avalanche types.
2. Identify avalanche characteristics.
3. Determine avalanche producing terrain.
4. Apply go/no go criteria.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-364-3 The Avalanche Handbook
2. 0-89886-834-3 Staying Alive in Avalanche Terrain
3. 0-9685856-1-2 Backcountry Avalanche Awareness
4. The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** A classroom with computer aided graphics is preferred.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Avalanche producing terrain or an area that resembles an avalanche prone slope.

---

**MW-AVAL-1025:** Conduct an avalanche search

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a snow covered mountainous environment, an avalanche rescue scenario, a MCWIK, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** In a timely and efficient manner to recover personnel and equipment, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Evaluate the accident site.
2. Determine likely burial sites.
3. Choose avalanche rescue equipment.
4. Conduct following actions.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-364-3 The Avalanche Handbook
2. 0-89886-834-3 Staying Alive in Avalanche Terrain
3. 0-9685856-1-2 Backcountry Avalanche Awareness
4. The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** A classroom with computer aided graphics is preferred.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Avalanche producing terrain or an area that resembles an avalanche prone slope.

---

**MW-AVAL-1026:** Perform duties as part of a avalanche search member

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a snow covered mountainous environment, a MCWIK, an avalanche rescue scenario, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Executing the duties assigned by the on site commander to facilitate avalanche victim recovery, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Evaluate the accident site.
2. Determine likely burial sites.
3. Choose avalanche rescue equipment.
4. Probe for an avalanche victim.
5. Dig up an avalanche victim.
6. Perform duties as an avalanche sentry.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-364-3 The Avalanche Handbook
2. 0-89886-834-3 Staying Alive in Avalanche Terrain
3. 0-9685856-1-2 Backcountry Avalanche Awareness
4. The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** A classroom with computer aided graphics is preferred.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Avalanche producing terrain or an area that resembles an avalanche prone slope.

---

**MW-CLEQ-1031:** Employ personal equipment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, personal clothing and equipment, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Ensuring all personal clothing and equipment is properly utilized and maintained, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine the type of environment.
2. Select cold weather clothing system components based on design.
3. Select clothing conducive to the environment.
4. Employ clothing in accordance with the acronym "COLD".
5. Employ the sleeping system.
6. Employ mission specific footwear.
7. Employ overwhites.

**REFERENCE:**

1. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**EQUIPMENT:** Define personal equipment as anything worn next to the body.

---

**MW-CLEQ-1032:** Pack for movement

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a mountainous/cold weather environment, T/E equipment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Selecting and packing the appropriate warfighting load for the mission, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assemble the required pocket items.
2. Assemble the required items of the assault load.
3. Assemble the required items of the combat load.
4. Assemble the required items of the sustaintment load.
5. Pack to facilitate load bearing on the skeletal structure.
6. Pack for a specific movement.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Cold Weather Operations
2. The Soldier's Load and the Mobility of a Nation

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

---

**MW-CLEQ-1033:** Employ general purpose mountaineering equipment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a mountainous environment, general purpose mountaineering equipment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Ensuring all general purpose mountaineering equipment is utilized and maintained in the appropriate manner, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Employ a utility rope/tape.
2. Employ a carabiner.
3. Employ rappel gloves.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-35.1 Commanders guide to cold weather equipment
2. MCRP 3-35.2B

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

**EQUIPMENT:** Utility rope/tape.

---

**MW-CLEQ-1034:** Employ the Marine Cold Weather Infantry Kit (MCWIK) system

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 1STSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL, BGEN, MAJGEN, LTGEN, GEN

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a cold weather environment, a Marine Cold Weather Infantry Kit (MCWIK), and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Ensuring the MCWIK system is properly utilized and maintained, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Pack the team sled for movement.
2. Rig the sled for movement.
3. Employ the MCWIK.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 31-70 Basic Cold Weather Operations
2. MCRP 3-35.1 Commanders guide to cold weather equipment
3. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Cold Weather Operations
4. Peak 1 Stove Instructional Manual
5. The Soldier's Load and the Mobility of a Nation

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

---

**MW-CLEQ-1035:** Employ the squad tent system

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, a squad tent system, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Ensuring the squad tent system is stable, operational, and properly maintained, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Erect the tent.
2. Operate the tent heating system.
3. Strike the tent.

**REFERENCE:**

1. Cold Weather Operations Manual, U.S. Army Alaska, NWTC, December 1999

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

---

**MW-CLEQ-1036:** Maintain snow mobility equipment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a snow covered environment, snow mobility equipment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Ensuring skis and snowshoes are properly utilized and maintained, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Construct a ski wax kit.
2. Construct snow mobility repair kits.
3. Apply ski wax.
4. Attach skins to skis.
5. Adjust snow shoe bindings.
6. Adjust ski bindings.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 31-70 Basic Cold Weather Operations
2. MCRP 3-35.1 Commanders guide to cold weather equipment
3. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Cold Weather Operations
4. MCRP 3-35.1B Combat Skiing
5. Cold Weather Operations Manual, U.S. Army Alaska, NWTC, December 1999

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

---

**MW-CLEQ-1037:** Employ weapons

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a mountainous/cold weather environment, T/E, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Utilizing and maintaining weapons systems in temperatures below freezing, compensating for angle, and/or altitude, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Employ weapons systems in temperatures below freezing.
2. Employ weapons systems in vertical terrain.
3. Employ weapons from a snow covered surface.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 31-72 Mountain Operations
2. MCRP 3-35.1 Commanders guide to cold weather equipment
3. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS
4. MCRP 3-35.2B Military Mountaineering
5. Cold Weather Operations Manual, U.S. Army Alaska, NWTC, December 1999

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

---

**MW-CLEQ-1038:** Employ optics

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a mountainous/cold weather environment, optics, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Ensuring proper functioning of optics in temperatures below freezing, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Employ optics in temperatures below freezing.
2. Employ optics in snow covered terrain.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 31-72 Mountain Operations
2. MCRP 3-35.1 Commanders guide to cold weather equipment
3. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Cold Weather Operations
4. MCRP 3-35.2B Military Mountaineering
5. Cold Weather Operations Manual, U.S. Army Alaska, NWTC, December 1999

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

---

**MW-CLEQ-1039:** Employ NBC equipment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a cold weather environment, NBC equipment, an NBC scenario, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Conducting effective monitor, survey, and decontamination operations, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine cold weather effects on NBC equipment.
2. Wear individual protective equipment in a cold weather environment.
3. Employ detection procedures for suspected frozen agents.
4. Recognize problems associated with the NAAK M-1 in a cold weather environment.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-11.4 Multi-service tactics, techniques, and procedures for nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) protection
2. FM 3-11.9 Potential Military chemical/biological agents and compounds
3. FM 3-5 NBC Decontamination
4. FM 3-6 Field behavior of NBC agents
5. FMFM 7-21 Tactical Fundamentals for Cold Weather Warfighting
6. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Cold Weather Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

---

**MW-CLMB-1042:** Perform basic belay techniques

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, T/E, improvised harness material and a locking carabiner, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Belaying a load or a rappeller, using a munter hitch, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Operate a munter hitch belay.
2. Belay a rappeller.

**REFERENCES:**

1. O-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
4. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For the individual Marine to conduct this training an area where artificial or natural anchor points must exist. At this level only an indirect, mechanical belay is conducted.

---

**MW-CLMB-1043:** Climb terrain

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in an environment with vertical to near vertical obstacles, T/E, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** 5th class vertical to near vertical obstacles less than 20ft., utilizing proper climbing techniques, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a route.
2. Make individual preparations.
3. Communicate with climbing commands.
4. Climb using foot holds.
5. Climb using hand holds.
6. Climb adhering to CASHWORTH.
7. Spot another climber.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
4. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For the individual Marine to conduct this training a vertical to near vertical cliff head of 20 feet or less is required.

---

**MW-CLMB-1044:** Climb using a top rope

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in an environment with vertical to near vertical obstacles, T/E, improvised harness material, a locking carabiner, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Conducting the climb utilizing top rope belay techniques, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a route.
2. Make individual preparations.
3. Attach climber to the end of the top rope.
4. Climb using a top rope.
5. Communicate with climbing commands.
6. Belay a top-roper.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
4. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For the individual Marine to conduct this training a vertical to near vertical, loosely packed or solid rock climbing area of 20 feet or less is required.

---

**MW-CLMB-1045:** Climb using fixed ropes

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in an environment with vertical to near vertical terrain or obstacles, T/E, improvised harness material, and a locking carabiner, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Ascending vertical to near vertical terrain of 2nd to 4th class or an obstacle utilizing a fixed rope, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a route.
2. Make individual preparations.
3. Attach to a fixed rope.

4. Ascend a fixed rope.
5. Detach from a fixed rope.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For the individual Marine to conduct this training 4th class or lower vertical to near vertical terrain of either loosely packed or solid rock or a vertical obstacle is required.

---

**MW-CLMB-1046:** Climb a specialized ladder

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in an environment with vertical to near vertical obstacles, T/E, improvised harness material, and a locking carabiner, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Ascending and descending a cable or a nylon ladder utilizing proper techniques, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make individual preparations.
2. Attach to a top-rope, if necessary.
3. Attach to a fixed-rope, if necessary.
4. Perform ladder climbing techniques.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. 1-879961-05-9 On Rope: North American Vertical Rope Techniques National Speleological Society
3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
4. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

**MATERIAL:** Specialized ladder includes, cable, nylon ladders used for mountaineering, and caving.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For the individual Marine to conduct this training a vertical to near vertical piece of terrain either loosely packed or solid rock is required.

---

**MW-CLMB-1047:** Negotiate steep terrain

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a mountainous environment, T/E, improvised harness material, and a locking carabiner, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Climbing 2nd to 4th class steep terrain utilizing rope assistance or steep earth equipment, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a route.
2. Make individual preparations.
3. Attach to a rope, if necessary.
4. Climb using necessary steep earth equipment.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
4. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For the individual to conduct this training, a gentle to steep angled piece of loosely packed terrain is required.

---

**MW-CLMB-1048:** Negotiate snow/ice covered terrain

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a cold weather environment, T/E, improvised harness material, and a locking carabiner, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Climbing, creating steps if necessary, and belaying on snow and/or ice when appropriate, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select route.
2. Make individual preparations.
3. Employ an ice axe.
4. Create steps.
5. Employ ropes, if necessary.
6. Establish a belay, if necessary.
7. Employ crampons, if necessary.
8. Descend a slope by glissading.
9. Self-arrest.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
4. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** To properly conduct this training, the individual will need gentle to steep angled snow or ice covered terrain.

---

**MW-ENVR-1067:** Overcome leadership challenges

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine leader, in a mountainous/cold weather environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Recognizing leadership challenges that occur in a mountainous/cold weather environment, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine leadership challenges.
2. Conduct self-checks.
3. Conduct buddy-checks.
4. Resolve leadership challenges.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
  2. Cold Weather Operations Manual, U.S. Army Alaska, NWTC, December 1999
- 

**MW-ENVR-1068:** Implement the principles of "BE SAFE MARINE"

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a mountainous/cold weather environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Overcoming and/or avoiding environmental hazards utilizing the principles of "BE SAFE MARINE", in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine cold weather/mountain hazards.
2. Assess risks.
3. Adhere to the principles of "BE SAFE MARINE".

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
  2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
  3. MCRP 3-35.1 Commanders guide to cold weather equipment
  4. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Cold Weather Operations
- 

**MW-ENVR-1071:** Assess the weather

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Identifying the characteristics and indicators of weather patterns in order to function in the environment, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Recognize indications of weather change.
2. Recognize the types of cloud progressions

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
  2. FMFRP 3-29 U.S. Navy Oceanographic And Meteorological Support System Manual
- 

**MW-ENVR-1072:** Apply snow-covered concealment techniques

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a snow covered environment, and proper camouflage clothing, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Utilizing the principles of continuing action and snow covered deception techniques, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine requirements for camouflage, cover, and concealment measures.
2. Utilize light discipline techniques.
3. Utilize noise discipline techniques.
4. Choose thermal deception techniques.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 20-3 Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys
  2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Squad
  3. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Cold Weather Operations
  4. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
- 

**MW-HRST-1073:** Conduct a fast rope descent

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** In any environment, given T/E, and fast rope.

**STANDARD:** Using required commands and procedures, safely fast rope.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect equipment.
2. Take part in pre-flight inspection/briefs.
3. FAST Rope from the helicopter on command.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**AIRCRAFT:** CH-46, CH-53, UH1N, V-22

**EQUIPMENT:** Communication Equipment, HRST Kit, and Gloves.

---

**MW-HRST-1074:** Conduct a Special Purpose Insertion/Extraction (SPIE)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** In any environment, given T/E, and SPIE Equipment.

**STANDARD:** Using required commands and procedures, safely fast rope.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Take part in pre-flight inspection/briefs.
2. Inspect equipment.
3. Don SPIE equipment.
4. Attach harness to the rope.
5. Perform HRST hand and arm signals.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**AIRCRAFT:** CH-46, CH-53, UH1N, V-22

**EQUIPMENT:** Communication Equipment, HRST Kit.

---

**MW-MOVE-1076:** Navigate to an objective utilizing expedient navigational aids and methods.

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:**

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, T/E, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Determine general location and direction of the objective.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine expedient navigation technique.

2. Determine the direction of the objective.
3. Move in the direction of the objective.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
  2. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
- 

**MW-MOVE-1077:** Move over rough terrain

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a rough terrain environment, T/E, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Moving efficiently across various types of slopes with and without a heavy load, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make individual preparations.
2. Determine slope type.
3. Determine slope approach angle.
4. Perform movement techniques.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

MW-CLEQ-1031

MW-CLEQ-1033

MW-CLEQ-1032

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

---

**MW-MOVE-1078:** Employ snow shoes

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a snow covered cold weather environment, T/E, snowshoes, and ski poles, without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Moving efficiently over snow, properly employing snow shoe techniques, with and without a sled, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make individual preparations.
2. Perform snowshoe movement techniques.
3. Pull a sled with snowshoes.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:** MW-CLEQ-1036

**REFERENCE:**

1. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Training area must be snow covered and contain slopes between 5-35 degrees.

---

**MW-MOVE-1079:** Employ ski's

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a snow covered environment, T/E, and ski equipment, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Utilizing Basic Skier techniques to negotiate snow covered terrain, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make individual preparations.
2. Perform basic skier level star turns.
3. Perform basic skier level Kick turn.
4. Perform basic skier level side step.
5. Perform basic skier level forward side step.
6. Perform basic skier level herringbone.
7. Perform basic skier level double pole.
8. Perform basic skier level non-dynamic diagonal stride.
9. Pull a sled on skis.
10. Employ skins.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:** MW-CLEQ-1036

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-35.1B Combat Skiing
2. Marine Corps Mountain Warfare Nordic Ski Instruction Manual

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Training area must be snow covered, groomed, track-set, and contain slopes between 5-35 degrees.

---

**MW-MOVE-1080:** Negotiate a water obstacle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, T/E, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Crossing the obstacle utilizing individual techniques, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make individual preparations.
2. Cross a water obstacle using individual methods.
3. Cross a water obstacle using team methods.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
3. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For this training to be conducted, an area that facilitates single and team crossing techniques, provides near and far side anchors for safety lines, and does not flow into a hazard that would prevent an individual from rescuing himself, must be utilized.

---

**MW-MOVE-1081:** Negotiate a snow/ice covered water obstacle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a snow/ice covered environment, T/E, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Crossing the snow/ice covered water obstacle utilizing individual techniques, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make individual preparations.
2. Employ safety measures.
3. Perform a self rescue.
4. Perform a buddy rescue.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

MW-CLEQ-1032

MW-CLEQ-1031

MW-CLEQ-1033

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. MCRP 3-35.1A Small Unit Leader's Guide to Cold Weather Operations
3. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Training area must contain a water obstacle and be snow/ice covered.

---

**MW-MOVE-1082:** Bivouac in a snow covered environment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a snow covered environment, T/E, and MCWIK, without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Establishing a tent team bivouac position that provides security and survivability, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make site selection
2. Organize support requirements.
3. Establish security.
4. Prepare track plan.
5. Construct tent team living area.
6. Utilize tent and/or expedient snow shelter.
7. Establish special use areas.
8. Complete track plan.
9. Establish a bivouac routine.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: MW-CLEQ-1034

REFERENCE:

1. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Training area must be snow covered.

---

MW-MOVE-1083: Evacuate a casualty

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Marine, in any environment, T/E, and the requirement to evacuate a casualty, without the aid of references.

STANDARD: Utilizing the steps in the acronym "APASSNGG", and an appropriate litter, in accordance with the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assess the safety of the accident/incident scene.
2. Apply the principles of the acronym "APASSNGG".
3. Secure a casualty to a litter/sled.
4. Perform litter carries.

REFERENCES:

1. 0-89886-878-5 Mountaineering First Aid: A guide to accident response and 1st aid care Fifth Edition
2. 0801670446 Wilderness Medicine: Management of Wilderness and Environmental Emergencies

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

---

MW-MOVE-1084: Move over glaciated terrain

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a glaciated environment, T/E, and MACK, without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Utilizing snow/ice equipment located in the MACK, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make individual preparations.
2. Employ snow and ice equipment.
3. Descend a slope by glissading.
4. Self arrest.
5. Perform duties of a rope team member.
6. Perform self-rescue techniques.

**REFERENCE:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Training area must be glaciated.

---

**MW-MOVE-1085:** Operate a four-wheel drive vehicle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, a four wheel drive vehicle, a road with ice or snow covered conditions, steep hills, and loose terrain, without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Utilizing specialized over-snow driving techniques safely, in accordance with the references

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct operations checks.
2. Employ safety equipment.
3. Drive in different snow depths.
4. Drive over different types of terrain.
5. Negotiate water obstacle by fording.

**REFERENCE:**

1. MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

Facility Code 17906 Wheeled Vehicle Drivers Course.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Training area must be snow covered.

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** Operators License required.

---

**MW-MOVE-1086:** Perform skijoring

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a snow covered environment, T/E, an over the snow tracked vehicle, and ski equipment, in accordance with the reference.

**STANDARD:** Safely and efficiently moving personnel on ski's to a predetermined destination.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make individual preparations.
2. Connect to the skijoring rope.
3. Perform skijoring techniques.
4. Perform duties as the safety rider.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

MW-MOVE-1079

MW-CLEQ-1036

**REFERENCE:**

1. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Training area must be snow covered.

---

**MW-MOVE-1087:** Employ a sled

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a snow covered environment, a MCWIK, T/E, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** To safely and effectively transport combat equipment and casualties in snow covered terrain, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Prepare the sled for movement.
2. Secure a load to the sled.
3. Pull a sled.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

MW-CLEQ-1034

**REFERENCE:**

1. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Training area must be snow covered.

---

**MW-MOVE-1088:** Operate an over the snow tracked vehicle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a snow covered environment, an over the snow tracked vehicle, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Safely and efficiently over various terrain and water obstacles, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct operations checks.
2. Employ safety equipment.
3. Negotiate terrain.
4. Negotiate water obstacles.
5. Conduct skijoring.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:** MW-AVAL-1024

**REFERENCE:**

1. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area  
Facility Code 17907 Tracked Vehicle Drivers Course  
Facility Code 17906 Wheeled Vehicle Drivers Course

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** A classroom with computer aided graphics is preferred.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Training area must be snow covered.

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** Operators License required.

---

**MW-SERE-1092:** Prepare for survival

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a survival situation, in any environment, with T/E, a survival kit.

**STANDARD:** Execute the requirements for survival for the first and second 24 hours in a survival situation, while performing in order the priorities of work.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine the personal preparations for survival.
2. Apply the components of the acronym "SURVIVAL".
3. Recognize the survival stressors.
4. Execute the priorities of work in a survival situation.
5. Execute pre-mission planning responsibilities.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 12 SAS Survival Guide; John Wiesman, 1993
  2. FM 21-76 Survival
  3. SAS Manual SAS Escape, Evasion, and Survival Manual - Barry Davis BME 1996
- 

**MW-SERE-1093:** Construct a personal survival kit

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, survival kit components, and with the aid references.

**STANDARD:** Including the minimum components for a geographical location in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select survival kit components.
2. Assemble a survival kit.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 12 SAS Survival Guide; John Wiesman, 1993
  2. FM 21-76 Survival
  3. SAS Manual SAS Escape, Evasion, and Survival Manual - Barry Davis BME 1996
- 

**MW-SERE-1094:** Construct survival fires

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a survival situation, in any environment, T/E, and a survival kit, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To provide warmth, signaling, and cooking, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Gather materials for primitive fire procurement.
2. Construct a survival fire
3. Maintain a survival fire.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 1 A Manual that Could Save Your Life; Chris Janowski 1996
  2. 12 SAS Survival Guide; John Wiesman, 1993
  3. AFP 36-2246 Aircrew Survival; 1996
  4. FM 21-76 Survival
- 

**MW-SERE-1095:** Procure water

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a survival situation (actual or controlled), in any environment, a survival kit, minimal personal, squad equipment, under any condition, and without the aid of the references.

**STANDARD:** Utilizing a variety of sources and techniques for securing water, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine locations of incidental water.
2. Avoid hazardous fluids.
3. Determine water quality.
4. Produce water using a disinfection method.
5. Construct a water generator.
6. Demonstrate the sedimentation process.
7. Construct a field expedient water filter.
8. Produce water using an expedient method.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0801670446 Wilderness Medicine: Management of Wilderness and Environmental Emergencies
  2. B-GA-217-001/PT-001 Down but not out, Canadian Survival Guide
  3. FM 21-76 Survival
  4. JP 3-50.1 National SAR Manual Volume II
  5. JP 3-50.3 Evasion and Recovery 1996
  6. MCRP 3-02H Survival, Evasion, and Recovery
- 

**MW-SERE-1096:** Construct an expedient survival shelter

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a survival situation, in any environment, T/E, and a survival kit, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Providing protection from elements which can cause death or incapacitation, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine the types of survival shelters.
2. Determine the tactical considerations for shelter construction

**REFERENCES:**

1. 1 A Manual that Could Save Your Life; Chris Janowski 1996
  2. 12 SAS Survival Guide; John Wiesman, 1993
  3. AFP 36-2246 Aircrew Survival; 1996
  4. FM 21-76 Survival
- 

**MW-SERE-1097:** Acquire game

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a survival situation, in any environment, T/E, and a survival kit, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Utilizing snares and other methods, to provide food, tools, and clothing, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine the considerations to take game.
2. Employ a snare.
3. Employ an expedient trap.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0011088 Snares and Snaring
  2. 1 A Manual that Could Save Your Life; Chris Janowski 1996
  3. BK1160 Trapping Rocky Mountain Furbearers
- 

**MW-SERE-1098:** Procure fish

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:**

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a survival situation, in any environment, T/E, and a survival kit, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Utilizing field expedient fishing methods, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine fishing locations.
2. Acquire fishing bait.
3. Construct field expedient fishing equipment.
4. Catch fish.
5. Prepare fish for use.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 1 A Manual that Could Save Your Life; Chris Janowski 1996
  2. AF 64-4 Search and Rescue Survival, 1985
  3. Outdoor Survival Guide 5th edition, Larry Dean Olsen 1990
- 

**MW-SERE-1099:** Construct expedient survival implements

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a survival situation, in any environment, with T/E, and a survival kit, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrating the ability to create tools, weapons, and equipment that can be employed for personal defense, construction, and other survival needs, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine the resources used to construct field expedient tools.
2. Construct a field expedient implement.
3. Construct field expedient snowshoes.
4. Employ field expedient snowshoes.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-425-10572-5 Tom Brown's Field Guide to Wilderness Survival
  2. 1 A Manual that Could Save Your Life; Chris Janowski 1996
  3. FM 21-76 Survival
- 

**MW-SERE-1100:** Subsist on plants

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a survival situation, in any environment, T/E, and a survival kit, without the aid or references.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrating the ability to identify and prepare edible plants in a survival situation, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine edible plants.
2. Consume an edible plant.
3. Prepare a plant for medicinal purposes.
4. Select plants that can be used to poison animals.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-520-05569-1 Poisonous Plants of California
  2. AFM 64-5 Search and Rescue Survival, 1969
  3. FM 21-76 Survival
- 

**MW-SERE-1101:** Subsist on insects

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a survival situation, in any environment, T/E, and a survival kit, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrating the ability to identify and collect edible insects in a survival situation, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine edible insects.
2. Consume an edible insect.

**REFERENCES:**

1. AFM 64-5 Search and Rescue Survival, 1969
  2. FM 21-76 Survival
- 

**MW-SERE-1102:** Prepare food for consumption

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a survival situation, in any environment, T/E, and a survival kit, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Ensuring the plants, insects, and game are properly cooked to eliminate health risks to the individual, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Field dress an animal.
2. Select parts that can be used for human consumption.
3. Select cooking technique.
4. Preserve food.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0801670446 Wilderness Medicine: Management of Wilderness and Environmental Emergencies
  2. 1 A Manual that Could Save Your Life; Chris Janowski 1996
  3. 12 SAS Survival Guide; John Wiesman, 1993
  4. B-GA-217-001/PT-001 Down but not out, Canadian Survival Guide
  5. B0006QT1D0 Field Manual of Wilderness Diseases in the Southeastern United States, 2nd edition, 1997.
  6. Outdoor Survival Guide 5th edition, Larry Dean Olsen 1990
- 

**MW-SERE-1103:** Apply survival medicine techniques

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a survival situation, in any environment, T/E, and a survival kit, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To prevent, diagnose, and treat various medical problems while in a survival situation, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Utilize field expedient techniques to prevent various medical problems.
2. Utilize field expedient techniques to diagnose various medical problems.
3. Utilize field expedient techniques to treat various medical problems.

**REFERENCES:**

1. B0006QT1D0 Field Manual of Wilderness Diseases in the Southeastern United States, 2nd edition, 1997.
  2. FM 21-76 Survival
  3. Wilderness Medicine, 4th Edition, Wm. Forgey M.D., ICS Books Inc., Merrillville, IN 1994
- 

**MW-SERE-1104:** Navigate in a survival situation

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a survival situation, in any environment, T/E, and a survival kit, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Navigating to an objective utilizing expedient navigational aids and methods, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a navigation method.
2. Construct a pocket navigator.
3. Navigate using a pocket navigator.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 123 The Essential Wilderness Navigator. David Seidmond; 1995
  2. AFM 64-5 Search and Rescue Survival, 1969
  3. FM 21-76 Survival
- 

**MW-SERE-1105:** Perform survival signaling

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a survival situation, in any environment, T/E, and a survival kit, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Utilizing man-made and improvised signaling devices to facilitate communication, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Perform international distress signals.
2. Construct a signaling device.
3. Employ a signaling device.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 21-76 Survival
  2. JP 3-50.1 National SAR Manual Volume II
  3. JP 3-50.3 Evasion and Recovery 1996
- 

**MW-SERE-1106:** Evade capture

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a survival situation, in any environment, T/E, and a survival kit, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Remaining undetected until the point of recovery, utilizing survival and evasion techniques, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Complete an ISOPREP (Isolated Personnel Report).
2. Develop an Evasion Plan of Action.
3. Determine a Selected Area For Evasion (SAFE).
4. Perform evasion techniques.

**REFERENCES:**

1. AFM 64-5 Search and Rescue Survival, 1969
  2. B-GA-217-001/PT-001 Down but not out, Canadian Survival Guide
  3. FM 21-76 Survival
  4. MCRP 3-02H Survival, Evasion, and Recovery
- 

**MW-SERE-1107:** Perform tracking

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a survival situation, in any environment, T/E, and a survival kit, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrating proper tracking and anti-tracking techniques to survive, avoid capture, and locate game, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Employ anti-tracking techniques.
2. Employ tracking techniques.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0425099660 Tom Brown's Field Guide to Nature Observation and Tracking
  2. 96-90686 Tactical Tracking Operations
  3. MCRP 3-02H Survival, Evasion, and Recovery
- 

**MW-SERE-1108:** Facilitate recovery

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a survival situation, in any environment, T/E, and a survival kit, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Utilizing techniques and procedures to aid in the recovery process in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Employ recovery devices.
2. Perform evader responsibilities
3. Conduct link-up procedures with recovery personnel.
4. Conduct an Unconventional Assisted Recovery Mechanism (UARM).

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 21-76 Survival
  2. JP 3-50.1 National SAR Manual Volume II
  3. JP 3-50.3 Evasion and Recovery 1996
  4. MCRP 3-02H Survival, Evasion, and Recovery
- 

**MW-TRST-1111:** Employ ropes

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, T/E, improvised harness material, and a locking carabiner, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Ensuring the right rope is used based on types, uses, and characteristics of ropes, and the ropes are properly maintained, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Choose rope for specific use.
2. Apply rope care considerations.
3. Maintain a rope.
4. Make a rope log entry.
5. Coil a rope.
6. Manage unused rope.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
3. 1-879961-05-9 On Rope: North American Vertical Rope Techniques National Speleological Society
4. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
5. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
6. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations
7. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17917 Rappelling Training Area

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For this training to be conducted, an area with an established rope corral or a rope tied in fashion that would facilitate knot tying and testing is required.

---

**MW-TRST-1112:** Tie knots

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:**

**CONDITION:** In any environment, T/E, improvised harness material, and a locking carabiner.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrate the ability to select knots for a specific requirement, and properly tie the knots.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Tie a knot/s that joins rope ends together.
2. Tie a friction knot/s.
3. Tie a knot/s that forms a loop/s.
4. Assess the security of a knot/s.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
  2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
  3. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
  4. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
  5. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations
  6. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
  7. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault
- 

**MW-TRST-1113:** Tie hitches

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, T/E, improvised harness material, and a locking carabiner, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrating the ability to select and properly tie a hitch for a specific requirement, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Tie a hitch/s around an object.
2. Tie a hitch/s over an object.
3. Assess the security of a hitch/s.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
  2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
  3. 1-879961-05-9 On Rope: North American Vertical Rope Techniques National Speleological Society
  4. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
  5. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
  6. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations
  7. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
  8. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault
- 

**MW-TRST-1114:** Tie an improvised harness

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, T/E, improvised harness material, and a locking carabiner, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Utilizing a rope and carabiner, and demonstrating knowledge of basic knot tying skills, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select improvised harness type.
2. Assemble harness materials.
3. Tie an improved harness.
4. Secure harness ends.
5. Assess harness security with a buddy check.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
  2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
  3. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
- 

**MW-TRST-1115:** Employ natural protection

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, T/E, improvised harness material, and a locking carabiner, without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Identifying a load bearing natural protection point in order to establish an anchor, and secure a load, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assess the security of a natural protection point/s.
2. Select equipment.
3. Attach joining material to protection point.
4. Assess the security of the protection point/joining material.

**REFERENCE:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

Facility Code 17917 Rappelling Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For this training to be conducted an area must provided points of natural terrain to construct anchors.

---

**MW-TRST-1116:** Construct a simple anchor

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, T/E, improvised harness material and a locking carabiner, and utilizing natural protection, without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Utilizing basic knot tying skills, and natural points of protection, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify anchor load/use.
2. Choose anchor system type.
3. Select anchor system equipment.
4. Establish an anchor using a single point.
5. Assess anchor security.
6. Establish an anchor using three points.

**REFERENCE:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area  
Facility Code 17917 Rappelling Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For this training to be conducted an area that facilitates building artificial anchor points must exist.

---

**MW-TRST-1117:** Employ a rope mechanical advantage system

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, T/E, and MACK components, without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Utilizing the system to move or lift an object, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Operate the rope mechanical advantage system.
2. Secure the load.
3. Cycle the rope mechanical advantage system.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

|              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| MW-CLEQ-1031 | MW-CLEQ-1032 | MW-TRST-1116 |
| MW-TRST-1111 | MW-TRST-1115 | MW-CLEQ-1033 |

**REFERENCE:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area  
Facility Code 17917 Rappelling Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For this training to be conducted an area that facilitates teaching and coaching individual Marine must be provided. To include having two anchor points, and an object to move.

---

**MW-TRST-1118:** Cross a high-tension rope installation

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, T/E, improvised harness material, and a locking carabiner, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Utilizing the proper methods and techniques for crossing a high-tension rope system, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select crossing technique.
2. Make personal preparations for crossing.
3. Attach a load.
4. Detach a load.
5. Employ a haul-line to move a load.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
2. MCRP 3-35.2B

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area  
Facility Code 17917 Rappelling Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For this training to be conducted an area that facilitates building a rope system that will be under high tension, in order for this to be conducted the area must provide two natural or artificial anchor points no farther apart than 150' and no closer than 40' that would be able to sustain a high degree of tension. It is preferred this area also have gentle to moderately sloping angle.

---

**MW-TRST-1119:** Operate a raising/lowering system

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, T/E, improvised harness material, and a locking carabiner, without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrating proper use of the system by securing, raising, lowering, unloading equipment, and personnel from a raising/lowering system, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Perform individual preparations.
2. Prepare load for movement.
3. Perform assigned tasks.
4. Choose load-securing method.

**REFERENCE:**

1. MCRP 3-35.2B

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

Facility Code 17917 Rappelling Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For this training to be conducted an area that provides a gentle to steep angled slope must exist. An area with vertical to near vertical obstacles is preferred.

---

**MW-TRST-1120:** Conduct a rappel

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, T/E, improvised harness material, and a locking carabiner, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** With and without a combat load from a tower/manmade structure, helicopter, or cliff face with one or two ropes, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Perform individual preparations.
2. Establish friction/break method.
3. Communicate rappel commands.
4. Tie off a rappel.
5. Perform duties of the bottom belayer.
6. Rappel on two ropes.
7. Rappel on one rope.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

|              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| MW-CLEQ-1032 | MW-CLEQ-1033 | MW-CLEQ-1031 |
| MW-TRST-1116 | MW-TRST-1111 | MW-TRST-1115 |
| MW-CLMB-1042 |              |              |

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
3. On Rope, Padgett and Smith

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area  
Facility Code 17917 Rappelling Training Area

**EQUIPMENT:** Rappel gloves, sling rope 18' (gold line 2), Locking carabiners, and static ropes (165' or 300')

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For this training to be conducted an area with at least a 20' vertical to near vertical piece of terrain, with natural or artificial anchor points must exist.

---

**4005. 2000-LEVEL INDIVIDUAL TRAINING EVENTS**

**MW-ANPK-2001:** Plan for the employment of pack animals

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, pack animals, pack equipment, and animal handlers, without the aid of the references.

**STANDARD:** During the planning process, in the time allotted by the commanding officer, to assist the units capability to move personnel and equipment, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Plan for the capabilities and the limitations of pack animals.
2. Plan for the capabilities and the limitations of pack equipment.
3. Plan for the employment considerations of a pack string.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

|              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| MW-ANPK-1001 | MW-ANPK-1002 | MW-ANPK-1004 |
| MW-ANPK-1005 | MW-ANPK-1008 | MW-ANPK-1015 |
| MW-ANPK-1010 | MW-ANPK-1011 | MW-ANPK-1013 |
| MW-ANPK-1014 | MW-ANPK-1009 |              |

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-87842-127-0 Packin' In On Mules and Horses
2. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.23 Small Wars Animal Packers Manual
3. UC303D34 Manual of Pack Transportation, U.S. Army 1917

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** A classroom with a power point projector, projector screen, and a computer.

---

**MW-AVAL-2006:** Assess avalanche terrain

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a MCWIK, T/E, in a snow covered mountainous environment, on an avalanche prone slope, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Collect, record, and interpret data, to aid in movement, in accordance with the standards.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify avalanches types.
2. Identify avalanches characteristics.
3. Determine avalanche producing terrain.
4. Determine avalanche hazards.
5. Apply red flag criteria associated with avalanche conditions.
6. Conduct snowpack observations.
7. Conduct bonding tests.
8. Record data.
9. Conduct ORM for crossing avalanche terrain.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:** MW-AVAL-1024

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-364-3 The Avalanche Handbook
2. 0-89886-834-3 Staying Alive in Avalanche Terrain
3. 0-9685856-1-2 Backcountry Avalanche Awareness
4. 0-9760118-0-8 Snow, Weather, and Avalanches: Observational Guidelines for Avalanche Programs in the United States
5. The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** A classroom with computer aided graphics is preferred.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Avalanche producing terrain or an area that resembles an avalanche prone slope.

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** AIARE Certified.

---

**MW-AVAL-2008:** Manage an unstable slope

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a MCWIK, T/E, and snow covered mountainous environment, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Ensuring no personnel are injured and no equipment is lost during transition of the unstable slope, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Choose crossing site.
2. Post security.
3. Organize personnel.
4. Adjust individual equipment.

5. Designate safety requirements.
6. Determine crossing technique.
7. Reorganize personnel.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-364-3 The Avalanche Handbook
2. 0-89886-834-3 Staying Alive in Avalanche Terrain
3. 0-9685856-1-2 Backcountry Avalanche Awareness
4. 0-9760118-0-8 Snow, Weather, and Avalanches: Observational Guidelines for Avalanche Programs in the United States

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** A classroom with computer aided graphics is preferred.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** AIARE Certified.

---

**MW-AVAL-2009:** Perform duties as the avalanche search site commander

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a MCWIK, T/E, in a snow covered mountainous environment, in an avalanche rescue scenario, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Organizing, controlling, and executing an avalanche search to recover personnel or equipment, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assess the accident site.
2. Post security.
3. Organize personnel.
4. Determine likely burial sites.
5. Choose avalanche rescue equipment.
6. Conduct search techniques.
7. Conduct following actions.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-834-3 Staying Alive in Avalanche Terrain
2. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS
3. The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

ROOMS/BUILDINGS: A classroom with computer aided graphics is preferred.

---

MW-AVAL-2010: Operate an electronic search device for a single burial

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Marine, a MCWIK, an electronic search device, in a snow covered mountainous environment during an avalanche rescue scenario, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: To locate/recover one electronic device in a time limit of 5 minutes, in accordance with the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine search device functions.
2. Perform an operational test of the search device.
3. Choose avalanche rescue equipment.
4. Perform search techniques with an electronic search device.
5. Locate electronic search device.
6. Conduct following actions.

REFERENCES:

1. 0-89886-364-3 The Avalanche Handbook
2. 0-89886-834-3 Staying Alive in Avalanche Terrain
3. 0-9685856-1-2 Backcountry Avalanche Awareness
4. The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

ROOMS/BUILDINGS: A classroom with computer aided graphics is preferred.

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: AIARE Certified.

---

MW-CLEQ-2014: Manage a Marine Assault Climber Kit (MACK)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, SGTMAJ, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Marine, in any environment, and a MACK, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Conducting a thorough inventory of all items and maintaining those items to ensure operational readiness of the MACK, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inventory MACK components.
2. Maintain MACK components.
3. Cut nylon ropes/tape for specific use.
4. Store MACK components.
5. Issue MACK components based on specific use.
6. Determine service life of MACK components.

**REFERENCES:**

1. Marine Assault Climbers Kit Care and Maintenance Manual
2. Marine Corps Stocklist, Marine Assault Climbers Kit MACK, SL-3-10161A

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Actions should be performed in a controlled area with plenty of space.

---

**MW-CLEQ-2015:** Manage snow mobility equipment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a snow covered environment, snow mobility equipment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Conducting operational checks of poles, skis, snowshoes, and bindings and properly maintaining them in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Construct a ski wax kit.
2. Construct snow mobility repair kits.
3. Apply ski wax.
4. Attach skins to skis.
5. Adjust snow shoe bindings.
6. Adjust ski bindings
7. Repair snow mobility equipment
8. Determine service life snow mobility equipment.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 31-70 Basic Cold Weather Operations
2. MCRP 3-35.1 Commanders guide to cold weather equipment
3. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS
4. MCRP 3-35.1B Combat Skiing
5. Cold Weather Operations Manual, U.S. Army Alaska, NWTC, December 1999

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

---

**MW-CLEQ-2016:** Manage a HRST Kit

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, SGTMAJ, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, and a HRST kit, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Conducting a thorough inventory of all items and maintaining the operational readiness of the HRST Kit, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inventory HRST components.
2. Maintain HRST components.
3. Cut nylon ropes/tape for specific use.
4. Store HRST components.
5. Determine service life of HRST components.
6. Issue HRST components based on specific use.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**EQUIPMENT:** HRST kit, rappelling Ropes.

---

**MW-CLMB-2022:** Manage a balance climbing site

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in an environment with vertical to near vertical obstacles, a MACK, T/E, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Selecting the best site, demonstrating proper climbing techniques, and supervising balance climbing, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select site.
2. Implement safety measures.
3. Give safety brief.
4. Demonstrate the duties of the climber.
5. Demonstrate the duties of the spotter.
6. Supervise balance climbing.
7. Coach climbers in the use of CASHWORTH.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
4. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For the individual Marine to conduct this training an area with a 20 ft cliff or lower is required.

---

**MW-CLMB-2023:** Manage a top-rope site

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in an environment with vertical to near vertical obstacles, a MACK, T/E, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Selecting the best site, demonstrating proper top-rope belay techniques, and supervising top-roping, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select site.
2. Establish a top-rope site.
3. Implement safety measures.
4. Give safety brief.
5. Demonstrate the duties of the climber.
6. Demonstrate the duties of the belayer.
7. Perform a top-rope rescue.
8. Supervise top-roping.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
4. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For the individual Marine to conduct this training an area with a 20 ft cliff or lower is required.

---

**MW-CLMB-2024:** Perform advanced belay techniques

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 1STSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, a MACK, T/E, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Determining belay type and method, operating a belay, and demonstrate tie off a belay and escape a belay, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine belay type.
2. Determine belay method.
3. Operate a belay device.
4. Construct a direct system.
5. Operate a belay system.
6. Tie off a belay.
7. Escape a belay.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
3. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
4. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Required support for this training will include an area where both artificial and natural points are available to construct a belay. As well vertical to near-vertical terrain must be available to demonstrate proper techniques.

---

**MW-CLMB-2025:** Lead climb

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 1STSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in an environment with vertical to near vertical obstacles, a MACK, T/E, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Climbing a single pitch of 5th class terrain rated 5.2 to 5.6 per the Yosemite Decimal Rating System, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a route.
2. Make personal preparations.
3. Select equipment.
4. Organize equipment.
5. Establish a belay.
6. Communicate with climbing commands.
7. Employ protection.
8. Climb selected route.
9. Perform a belay change-over.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
3. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
4. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For this training to be conducted an area with the following criteria must be provided. Under the American Yosemite Decimal System, an area that provides 5th class climbing terrain, which encompasses the registered grades of 5.2-5.6, and be between the heights of 30-60 feet, must exist. The individual Marine performing the test will be in the T/E uniform established by the evaluator; this should be the combat uniform with issued combat footwear.

---

**MW-CLMB-2026:** Lead climb using aid climbing techniques

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 1STSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in an environment with vertical to near vertical obstacles, T/E, and a MACK, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Demonstrating the ability to overcome any vertical obstacle utilizing aid climbing equipment and hasty aid climbing techniques, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify aid climbing equipment characteristics.
2. Use hasty aid techniques.
3. Use Etriers.
4. Transition from free climbing to aid climbing and back to free climbing.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
3. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
4. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For the individual Marine to conduct this training an area with a vertical to near vertical cliff of at least 20 feet in height is required.

---

**MW-CLMB-2027:** Perform a vertical rescue

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 1STSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in an environment with vertical to near vertical obstacles, T/E, improvised harness material, and locking carabiner, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Safely and efficiently evacuating a person on vertical to near vertical (5th Class) terrain, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Rescue of a lead climber.
2. Rescue of a number two climber.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
3. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
4. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17917 Rappelling Training Area.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For the individual Marine to conduct this training an area with a vertical to near vertical cliff of at least 20 feet in height is required.

---

**MW-CLMB-2028:** Lead climb steep earth

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 1STSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, a MACK, T/E, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Navigating 2nd to 4th Class steep earth terrain, properly preparing the route for follow on climbers, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a steep earth route.
2. Use steep earth equipment.
3. Employ artificial protection.
4. Assess the security of protection.
5. Establish an anchor.
6. Establish a belay.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
4. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
5. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For the individual Marine to conduct this training an area with a loose to packed soil slope of at least 20 feet in height is required.

---

**MW-CLMB-2029:** Manage a fixed rope installation

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in an environment with vertical to near vertical terrain, a MACK, T/E, and without the aid or references.

**STANDARD:** Selecting the site, constructing the installation, and supervising operations, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Implement site safety/control measures.
2. Select support requirements.
3. Organize personnel and equipment.
4. Construct a site specific fixed rope installation.
5. Perform fixed rope installation maintenance.
6. Perform duties of the rope installation point NCO.
7. Supervise a fixed rope installation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
3. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For the individual Marine to conduct this training an area with a slope of near vertical, 4th class terrain at least 20 feet in height is required.

---

**MW-CLMB-2030:** Employ specialized ladders

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a MACK, T/E, in an environment with vertical to near vertical obstacles, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Selecting the site, constructing, and supervising the operation of a climbing lane with a ladder, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a ladder.
2. Establish a ladder climbing lane.
3. Assess the security of a ladder.
4. Implement safety measures to protect the climber.
5. Supervise a ladder climbing lane.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. 1-879961-05-9 On Rope: North American Vertical Rope Techniques National Speleological Society
3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**MW-CLMB-2031:** Record cliff data

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Sketching and recording cliff data in the Cliff Report format, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a site.
2. Sketch a cliff.
3. Record cliff data.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
  2. FM 31-72 Mountain Operations
  3. MCWL X-FILE 3-35.21 Cliff Assault
-

MW-CLMB-2032: Climb snow/ice

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Marine, a MACK, T/E, in snow/ice covered environment, and without the aid of reference.

STANDARD: Overcoming near vertical snow/ice less than 20 ft in height, in accordance with the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Select a route.
2. Implement safety/control measures.
3. Select equipment.
4. Organize equipment.
5. Employ protection, if necessary.
6. Establish a belay.
7. Belay follow-on climber.

REFERENCES:

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: For the individual Marine to conduct this training an area with gentle to steep angled slopes, having mixed rock, snow and ice must exist.

---

MW-CLMB-2034: Climb a vertical structure

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Marine, a structure, a MACK, T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

STANDARD: Ascending the vertical structure using urban climbing techniques, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select climbing route.
2. Implement safety/control measures.
3. Climb using the hanger/pole method.
4. Employ urban climbing specific protection.
5. Climb a cable ladder with pole/grappling hook placement.
6. Pyramid climb.
7. Climb a pipe.
8. Climb using direct aid methods.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. 1-879961-05-9 On Rope: North American Vertical Rope Techniques National Speleological Society
3. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Minimum a 2 story building with windows, external pipes, suitable anchor points on top and external building material that facilitates aid climbing.

---

**MW-ENVR-2041:** Resolve leadership challenges

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine in a mountainous/cold weather environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To prevent any loss of unit readiness, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine leadership challenges.
2. Implement self-checks.
3. Implement buddy-checks.
4. Develop unit SOP
5. Apply leadership principles.
6. Enforce unit SOP

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
  2. Cold Weather Operations Manual, U.S. Army Alaska, NWTC, December 1999
-

**MW-ENVR-2042:** Assess operational risk

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a mountain/cold weather environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Prepare to conduct training so no personnel are injured, and no equipment is lost, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify mountain/cold weather hazards.
2. Assess risks.
3. Make control decisions.
4. Implement controls.
5. Supervise all phases of the operation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.27A Operational Risk Management
  2. MCRP 3-35.1 Commanders guide to cold weather equipment
  3. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS
  4. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS
- 

**MW-ENVR-2043:** Field forecast weather

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Interpret weather data, and react, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine the types of cloud progression.
2. Determine weather patterns.
3. Determine characteristics of frontal systems.
4. Determine indications of weather change.
5. Predict impact of weather.
6. Record weather data.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
  2. FMFRP 3-29 U.S. Navy Oceanographic And Meteorological Support System Manual
- 

**MW-ENVR-2044:** Determine terrain accessibility

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** To determine unit and individual mobility, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine the types of rock.
2. Identify mountain topography.
3. Identify glaciated terrain features.
4. Determine types of mountain obstacles.
5. Determine slope angle.
6. Determine classes of terrain.

**REFERENCE:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
- 

**MW-ENG-2052:** Determine ice covered water obstacle accessibility

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 1STSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, T/E, in a cold weather environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Choose an ice covered water obstacle crossing site that will withstand the weight of the personnel/equipment required to cross without breaking through the ice, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine the thickness of the ice.
2. Determine the thickness of snow on the ice.
3. Determine how the ice is attached to the bank.
4. Measure the slope of the bank.

5. Measure the width and depth of the water.
6. Measure the speed of the current.
7. Determine weight capacity of the ice.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance
2. MCRP 3-17A/FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces.

---

**MW-ENG-2053:** Conduct a snow/ice covered road route reconnaissance

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 1STSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, T/E, engineering assets, in a snow covered cold weather environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To determine road accessibility, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Review the mission.
2. Review the map of the route to be taken.
3. Conduct appropriate reconnaissance(s) (road, bridge, fording, tunnel).
4. Submit reconnaissance report(s) and/or overlays.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance
2. FMFM 13 MAGTF Engineer Operations
3. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data
4. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17710 Multipurpose Training Range (MPTR).

---

**MW-ENG-2054:** Construct field fortifications in a mountainous/cold weather environment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 1STSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, T/E, engineering assets, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To provide effective camouflage, cover, and concealment, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify location of survivability positions.
2. Identify and prioritize survivability requirements.
3. Plan for protective obstacle integration.
4. Conduct inspection of survivability positions for proper construction techniques.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 5-15 Field Fortifications
2. MCRP 3-17A/FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** Chain saw, axe, shovel, hammer, and nails.

---

**MW-ENG-2055:** Construct snow/ice obstacles

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 1STSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To deny avenues of approach to the enemy, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine type of obstacle required.
2. Identify equipment and materials available.
3. Construct the obstacle.
4. Submit required engineer reports and overlays.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 5-102 Countermobility
2. MCRP 3-17A/FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** Heavy equipment (bulldozer or grader).

---

**MW-ENG-2056:** Employ explosive devices in an arctic environment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 1STSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, T/E, in an arctic environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To deny access to avenues of approach or facilitate movement, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine burn rate of time-fuze at the target altitude.
4. Detonate a demolition charge using a non-electric initiation system.
5. Detonate a demolition charge using an electric initiation system.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
2. MCRP 3-17A/FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

| <u>DODIC</u>                              | <u>Quantity</u>             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| M131 Cap, Blasting Non-Electric M7        | Five per class              |
| M023 Charge, Demolition Block M112 1-1/4  | Five per class              |
| M670 Fuse, Blasting Time M700             | One roll per class          |
| M456 Cord, Detonating PETN Type I Class E | Five hundred feet per class |
| M766 Igniter, M60 for Time Blasting Fuse  | Six per class               |

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**MW-ENG-2057:** Conduct an ice breach

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 1STSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, in a snow covered cold weather environment, and the necessary equipment, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To destroy ice formations or weak ice to facilitate movement, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select the appropriate explosives for the target.
2. Assemble the charge.
3. Determine the safe distance for blast and fragmentation.
4. Emplace the charge(s).
5. Detonate the charge(s).

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance
2. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
3. MCRP 3-17A/FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

| <u>DODIC</u>                              | <u>Quantity</u>                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| M023 Charge, Demolition Block M112 1-1/4  | Three satchel charges                |
| M032 Charge, Demolition Block TNT 1-Pound | Twenty per class                     |
| M456 Cord, Detonating PETN Type I Class E | One five hundred foot roll per class |
| M630 Firing Device, Demolition M1 Pull Ty | Six boxes of five per class          |
| M670 Fuse, Blasting Time M700             | Four rolls per class                 |
| M131 Cap, Blasting Non-Electric M7        | Three boxes per class (30)           |

---

**MW-ENG-2058:** Conduct avalanche initiation utilizing demolitions

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 1STSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, T/E, required demolitions, in a snow covered environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To eliminate an avalanche threat, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select the appropriate explosives for the designated target.
2. Assemble the charge(s).
4. Emplace the charge(s).
5. Detonate the charge(s).

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 5-102 Countermobility
2. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
3. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

| <u>DODIC</u>                              | <u>Quantity</u>                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| M023 Charge, Demolition Block M112 1-1/4  | One satchel per class            |
| M032 Charge, Demolition Block TNT 1-Pound | Ten sticks per class             |
| M670 Fuse, Blasting Time M700             | Two rolls per class              |
| M456 Cord, Detonating PETN Type I Class E | One thousand foot roll per class |
| M766 Igniter, M60 for Time Blasting Fuse  | Two boxes per class              |
| M131 Cap, Blasting Non-Electric M7        | One box per class                |

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**EQUIPMENT:** Demolition bag

---

**MW-ENG-2059:** Establish semi-permanent rope installations (Rigging)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 1STSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a MACK, T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To facilitate movement of personnel, equipment through a specific area for a specified amount of time, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a site.
2. Select personnel and equipment.
3. Implement site safety/control measures.
4. Establish the high-tension semi-permanent rope installation.
5. Employ a height-gaining device, if required.
6. Move a load across a high-tension rope installation.
7. Dispatch personnel/equipment.
8. Assess security of the installation.
9. Retrieve a high-tension semi-permanent rope installation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 20-32 Mine/Countermining Operations
2. FM 5-102 Countermobility
3. FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance
4. FMFM 13 MAGTF Engineer Operations
5. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data
6. MCRP 3-17A/FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data
7. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports
8. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For this training to be conducted, an area that provides at least two natural and artificial anchor points must exist.

---

**MW-MOVE-2067:** Navigate in the mountains

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a map, mountaineering compass, an altimeter, T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To a specific location within 100 meters, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Employ a Brunton 8099 compass.
2. Navigate using the contour tangent method.
3. Determine location.
4. Employ a Global Positioning System.
5. Conduct a one point resection with an altimeter.
6. Convert a UTM coordinate to a MGRS coordinate.
7. Plot a lat/long position.
8. Determine time/distance travel.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area  
Facility Code 17412 Land Navigation Course

**EQUIPMENT:** A handheld/wrist-mounted GPS and a mountaineering compass are required. A mountaineering compass is defined as a plastic compass, filled with mineral oil, a clear plastic base with built in co-ordinate scale, adjustable declination dial, inclinometer, and a sighting mirror.  
(Brunton/Silva/Suunto)

---

**MW-MOVE-2068:** Operate an altimeter

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, an altimeter, T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To monitor barometric pressure and determine location within one contour interval of the map being used, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Function check an altimeter.
2. Monitor barometric pressure.
3. Calibrate an altimeter.
4. Determine elevation.
5. Track ascent rate.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17412 Land Navigation Course  
Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**EQUIPMENT:** Mountaineering altimeter

---

**MW-MOVE-2069:** Employ ski's

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, ski equipment, T/E, and snow covered environment, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To negotiate snow covered terrain, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make individual preparations.
2. Perform military skier level star turns.
3. Perform military skier level Kick turn.
4. Perform military skier level side step.

5. Perform military skier level forward side step.
6. Perform military skier level herringbone.
7. Perform military skier level double pole.
8. Perform military skier level dynamic diagonal stride.
9. Perform military skier level uphill dynamic diagonal stride.
10. Perform military skier level kick turn.
11. Perform military skier level straight run.
12. Perform military skier level gliding wedge.
13. Perform military skier level breaking wedge.
14. Perform military skier level traverse.
15. Perform military skier level step turns.
16. Perform military skier level transition and absorption techniques.
17. Perform military skier level side-slip.
18. Employ skins.
19. Perform military skier level wedge turn.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:** MW-MOVE-1079

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-35.1B Combat Skiing
2. Marine Corps Mountain Warfare Nordic Ski Instruction Manual

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Training area must be snow covered, groomed, track-set, and contain slopes between 5-35 degrees.

---

**MW-MOVE-2070:** Employ a sled

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a MCWIK, T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** to transport equipment and casualties, in snow covered terrain in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make individual preparations.
2. Secure a load to a sled.
3. Pull a sled.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 31-70 Basic Cold Weather Operations

2. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS
3. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17920 Panel Bridge Area

---

**MW-MOVE-2071:** Manage snow covered bivouac site

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, T/E, in a snow covered environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Selecting, establishing, and supervising a snow covered bivouac site, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct leader reconnaissance.
2. Establish security.
3. Establish dummy position/s.
4. Establish track plan.
5. Establish living areas.
6. Establish special use areas.
7. Establish a bivouac routine.
8. Supervise continuing actions.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 31-70 Basic Cold Weather Operations
2. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS
3. MCRP 3-35.2A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO MOUNTAIN OPERATIONS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Training area must be snow covered.

---

**MW-MOVE-2072:** Manage a water obstacle crossing site

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Select, establish, and supervise the safe and efficient movement across a water obstacle, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a crossing site.
2. Implement safety/control measures.
3. Select the crossing technique to be used.
4. Organize personnel for crossing.
5. Supervise the crossing of Marines.
6. Retrieve equipment.

**REFERENCE:**

1. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For this training to be conducted an area that facilitates single and team crossing techniques, provides near and far side anchors for safety lines, and does not flow into a hazard that would prevent an individual from rescuing himself.

---

**MW-MOVE-2073:** Manage a snow/ice covered water obstacle crossing site

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a MACK, T/E, in a snow/ice covered environment, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Select, establish, and supervise the safe and efficient movement across a snow/ice covered water obstacle, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a crossing site.
2. Implement safety/control measures.
3. Select crossing technique to be used.
4. Organize personnel for crossing.
5. Supervise the crossing.
6. Retrieve equipment.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Training area must be snow/ice covered and include water obstacles.

---

**MW-MOVE-2074:** Lead a group over glaciated terrain

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a rope team, a MACK, T/E, in glaciated terrain, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Select, move and supervise a safe and efficient group movement over glaciated terrain, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct hazard assessment.
2. Select a tentative route.
3. Choose travel technique.
4. Conduct individual/group preparations.
5. Employ snow/ice protection if necessary.
6. Organize group for rescue.

**REFERENCE:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This training area must include glaciated terrain.

---

**MW-MOVE-2075:** Employ an over-the-snow tracked vehicle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, an over-the-snow tracked vehicle, in a snow covered/mountainous environment, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Operate an over-the-snow tracked vehicle (snow mobile/ATV with tracks), in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect the vehicle.
2. Make personal preparations.
3. Operate the vehicle.
4. Conduct skijoring operations.
5. Perform operations checks.
6. Perform routine maintenance.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:** MW-AVAL-1024

**REFERENCE:**

1. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area  
Facility Code 17907 Tracked Vehicle Drivers Course

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** Operators License required.

---

**MW-MOVE-2076:** Move over glaciated terrain

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 1 month

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a MACK, T/E, in a glaciated environment, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Move over glaciated terrain, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make individual preparations.
2. Employ snow and ice equipment.
3. Descend a slope by glissading.
4. Self-arrest.
5. Perform duties as a rope team member.
6. Perform self-rescue techniques.
7. Construct a raising/ lowering system utilizing mechanical advantage.

**REFERENCE:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This training area must include glaciated terrain.

---

**MW-MOVE-2077:** Lead a group through an alpine environment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a MACK, T/E, in an alpine environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Select, move and supervise a safe and efficient group movement through an alpine environment, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct a Mountain Leader meeting.
2. Assess environmental hazards.
3. Select routes.
4. Identify equipment requirements.
5. Employ short roping techniques.
6. Employ hasty belays.
7. Employ individual/team safety measures.
8. Assess hazards during movement.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This training area must include high altitude, 5th class terrain, and glaciated terrain.

---

**MW-TRST-2103:** Employ ropes

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a rope, T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Employ ropes based on types, uses, and characteristics in, accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Choose rope for a specific use.
2. Apply rope care considerations.
3. Maintain ropes.
4. Inspect rope coils.
5. Inspect knots.
6. Inspect hitches.
7. Inspect ropes used in rope systems.
8. Inspect improvised harnesses.
9. Determine end of service-life for ropes/nylon products.
10. Maintain rope log.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** In any area in which a rope corral can be set up.

---

**MW-TRST-2104:** Tie knots

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a rope, T/E, in all lighting conditions, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Tie knots in a specific time limit and during periods of low visibility, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Tie a knot/s that joins rope ends together.
2. Tie a friction knot/s.
3. Tie a knot/s that forms a loop/s.
4. Assess the security of a knot/s.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering

---

**MW-TRST-2105:** Tie hitches

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a MACK, T/E, in any environment, without the aid of the references.

**STANDARD:** In a time limit/s of 30 and 45 seconds, blindfolded, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Tie a hitch/s around an object.
2. Tie a hitch/s over an object.
3. Dress a hitch/s.
4. Set a hitch/s.
5. Assess the security of a hitch/s.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** A rope coral or similar objects must be present in order to tie the hitches.

---

**MW-TRST-2106:** Employ rock protection

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a MACK, T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Emplacing rock protection to establish protection points for climbing or for anchors, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Choose rock protection.
2. Organize rock protection for use.
3. Place passive rock protection.
4. Place spring-loaded rock protection.
5. Utilize pre-established pitons.
6. Utilize pre-established bolts.
7. Assess the security of rock protection.
8. Affix rope to rock protection.

**REFERENCES:**

1. O-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Some where that there is a natural rock formation, so that the protection can be placed, or some where with an anchor board to substitute for the protection.

---

**MW-TRST-2107:** Construct an anchor

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a MACK, T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Establishing equalized, equalizing, in-line for use in rope system, and installation, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify anchor load/use.
2. Choose anchor system type.
3. Select anchor system equipment.
4. Establish an anchor using a single point.
5. Establish an anchor using two points.
6. Establish an anchor using three points.
7. Assess anchor security.

**REFERENCES:**

1. O-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Any area that students have access to a natural cliff head to place protection, or an anchor board to substitute for artificial protection.

---

**MW-TRST-2108:** Manage an anchor site

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a MACK, T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** For use with various rope installations, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Implement site safety/control measures.
2. Select personnel and equipment.
3. Organize personnel and equipment.
4. Construct an anchor.
5. Break down the anchor site.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

---

**MW-TRST-2109:** Conduct a rappel

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a Mack, T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Rappelling with and without a combat load from a tower/manmade structure, helicopter, or cliff face with one or two ropes, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Perform individual preparations.
2. Establish friction/brake using a belay device.
3. Rappel as the first man down.
4. Tie off a rappel.
5. Rappel without gloves.
6. Perform a self-rescue.
7. Perform a tandem rappel.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

|              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| MW-CLEQ-1031 | MW-CLEQ-1033 | MW-CLEQ-1032 |
| MW-TRST-1116 | MW-TRST-1111 | MW-TRST-1115 |
| MW-CLMB-1042 |              |              |

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
3. On Rope, Padgett and Smith

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area  
Facility Code 17917 Rappelling Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For this training to be conducted an area with at least a 20' vertical to near vertical piece of terrain, with natural or artificial anchor points must exist.

---

**MW-TRST-2110:** Manage a rappel site

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 1STSGT, SGTMAJ, MGYSGT, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a MACK, T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Establishing the rappel site, managing personnel, support equipment, and supervising site recovery, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine type of rappel.
2. Implement site safety/control measures.
3. Select support requirement.
4. Establish a site specific rappel point.
5. Establish a releasable anchor.
6. Conduct rappel point NCO brief.
7. Perform first man down duties.

8. Perform rappel rescue.
9. Convert rappel site for retrieval.

**REFERENCE:**

1. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area  
Facility Code 17917 Rappelling Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For this training to be conducted an area that provides a vertical to near vertical piece of terrain with natural and artificial anchor points must exist.

---

**MW-TRST-2111:** Tension a rope using mechanical advantage

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a MACK and T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Constructing and applying mechanical advantage to tighten a rope and secure the installation/system, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Implement site safety/control measures.
2. Identify equipment requirements.
3. Construct a 3:1 mechanical advantage rope system.
4. Convert a 3:1 to a 6:1 mechanical advantage rope system.
5. Convert a 6:1 to a 9:1 mechanical advantage rope system.
6. Secure a mechanical advantage rope system.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
2. MCRP 3-35.2B

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

---

**MW-TRST-2112:** Employ a height-gaining device

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a MACK, T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Utilizing a height-gaining device, in a high-tension rope installation, or raising/lowering system, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Implement site safety/control measures.
2. Establish a natural height-gaining device.
3. Employ an artificial height-gaining device.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
2. MCRP 3-35.2B

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

---

**MW-TRST-2113:** Manage a high-tension rope installation

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a MACK, T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Establishing a high-tension rope installation, managing personnel, support equipment, and supervising installation recovery, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a site.
2. Select support requirements.
3. Implement site safety/control measures.
4. Establish the high-tension rope installation.
5. Employ a height-gaining device, if needed.
6. Move a load across a high-tension rope installation.
7. Dispatch personnel/equipment.
8. Assess security of the installation.
9. Retrieve a high-tension rope installation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
3. MCRP 3-35.2B

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For this training to be conducted an area that provides at least two natural and artificial anchor points must exist.

---

**MW-TRST-2114:** Manage a raising/lowering system

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a MACK, T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Establishing a raising/lowering system, managing personnel, support equipment, and supervising system recovery, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a site
2. Implement site safety/control measures.
3. Select support requirements.
4. Establish the raising/lowering system.
5. Employ a height gaining device, if needed.
6. Perform the duties of the raise/lower NCO.
7. Assess security of the installation

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
3. MCRP 3-35.2B

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** For this training to be conducted an area that provides a gentle to steep angled piece of terrain with proper natural and artificial anchors must exist.

---

**MW-TRST-2115:** Employ steep earth protection

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a MACK, T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Using steep earth equipment to establish protection points for climbing or anchors, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Choose steep earth equipment.
2. Organize steep earth equipment for use.
3. Employ steep earth protection.
4. Assess security of steep earth protection.
5. Construct anchor using steep earth protection points.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

---

**MW-TRST-2116:** Employ snow/ice equipment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a Mack, T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Using snow and ice equipment to establish protection points for climbing or for anchors, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select snow/ice equipment.
2. Organize snow/ice equipment for use.
3. Assess security of snow/ice protection.
4. Construct an anchor using snow/ice protection.
5. Construct a natural snow anchor.
6. Construct a natural ice anchor.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
2. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This training requires a snow/ice covered area.

---

**MW-HRST-2121:** Conduct a HRST brief

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Assigned as a Rope Master for the HRST operation

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, SGTMAJ, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Rope Master, a HRST checklist, an aircraft, an aircrew, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Applying HRST considerations, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Assemble the aircrew.
2. Brief equipment rigging.
3. Brief sequence of events.
4. Brief safety/ORM plan.
5. Debrief aircrew after completion of operation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

---

**MW-HRST-2122:** Rig a simulated helicopter tower for fast rope operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Assigned as a Rope Master for the HRST operation

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, SGTMAJ, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Rope Master, a simulated helicopter tower, a HRST kit, required safety personnel, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Ensuring systems, anchors, and safety equipment are rigged for safety, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Organize support equipment.
2. Implement site safety/control measures.
3. Establish anchors.
4. Rig other rope suspension equipment.
5. Deploy ropes.
6. Ensure Safety Insert Officer (SIO) inspects rigging for correct installation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17917 Rappelling Training Area

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Simulated helicopter tower

**EQUIPMENT:** HRST Kit

---

**MW-HRST-2123:** Manage a simulated helicopter tower for fast rope operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Assigned as a Rope Master for the HRST operation

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, SGTMAJ, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Rope Master, a simulated helicopter tower, a HRST kit, required safety personnel, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Organizing and controlling personnel and equipment, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Ensure Safety Insert Officer (SIO) inspects rigging for correct installation.
2. Give a HRST brief.
3. Supervise donning of individual HRST equipment.
4. Assign Master ropers to each point.
5. Demonstrate one complete cycle of the training to be accomplished.
6. Perform emergency procedures, if required.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17917 Rappelling Training Area

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** Simulated helicopter tower.

**EQUIPMENT:** HRST Kit.

---

**MW-HRST-2124:** Rig a helicopter for fast roping

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Assigned as a Rope Master for the HRST operation

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, SGTMAJ, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Rope Master, a helicopter, a HRST kit, required safety personnel, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Ensuring systems, anchors, and safety equipment are rigged for safety, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect the aircraft and all attachment points.
2. Select equipment.
3. Inspect equipment.
4. Rig helicopter
5. Ensure Safety Insert Officer (SIO) inspects rigging for correct installation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**AIRCRAFT:** CH-46, CH-53, UH1N, V-22

**EQUIPMENT:** Communication equipment, HRST kit

---

**MW-HRST-2125:** Manage helicopter fast rope operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Assigned as a Rope Master for the HRST operation

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, SGTMAJ, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Rope Master, a helicopter, a HRST kit, required safety personnel, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Organizing and controlling, personnel and equipment, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Ensure Safety Insert Officer (SIO) inspects rigging for correct installation.
2. Give a HRST brief.
3. Supervise donning of individual HRST equipment.
4. Assign Master ropers to each point.
5. Demonstrate one complete cycle of the training to be accomplished.
6. Perform emergency procedures, if required.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**AIRCRAFT:** CH-46, CH-53, UH1N, V-22

**EQUIPMENT:** Communication equipment, HRST kit.

---

**MW-HRST-2126:** Rig a helicopter for rappelling

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Assigned as a Rope Master for the HRST operation.

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, SGTMAJ, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Rope Master, a helicopter, a HRST kit, required safety personnel, in any environment, given a helicopter, and HRST kit, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Ensuring systems, anchors, and safety equipment rigged for safety, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect the aircraft and all attachment points.
2. Select equipment.
3. Inspect equipment.
4. Rig helicopter.

5. Ensure Safety Insert Officer (SIO) inspects rigging for correct installation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**AIRCRAFT:** CH-46, CH-53, UH1N, V-22

**EQUIPMENT:** MACK and HRST kit

---

**MW-HRST-2127:** Manage helicopter rappelling operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Assigned as a Rope Master for the HRST operation

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, SGTMAJ, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Rope Master, a helicopter, a HRST kit, required safety personnel, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Organizing and controlling, personnel and equipment, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Ensure Safety Insert Officer (SIO) inspects rigging for correct installation.
2. Give a HRST brief.
3. Supervise donning of individual HRST equipment.
4. Assign Master ropers to each point.
5. Demonstrate one complete cycle of the training to be accomplished.
6. Perform emergency procedures, if required.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**AIRCRAFT:** CH-46, CH-53, UH1N, V-22

**EQUIPMENT:** Communication equipment, MACK and HRST kit

---

**MW-HRST-2128:** Rig a helicopter for SPIE

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Assigned as a Rope Master for the HRST operation.

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, SGTMAJ, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Rope Master, a helicopter, a HRST kit, required safety personnel, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Ensuring systems, anchors, and safety equipment rigged for safety, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect the aircraft and all attachment points.
2. Select equipment.
3. Inspect equipment.
4. Rig helicopter.
5. Ensure Safety Insert Officer (SIO) inspects rigging for correct installation.
6. Ensure Safety Insert Officer (SIO) inspects rigging for proper installation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**AIRCRAFT:** CH-46, CH-53, UH1N, V-22

**EQUIPMENT:** HRST kit.

---

**MW-HRST-2129:** Manage SPIE operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Assigned as a Rope Master for the HRST operation.

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, SGTMAJ, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Rope Master, a helicopter, a HRST kit, required safety personnel, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Organizing and controlling, personnel and equipment, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Ensure Safety Insert Officer (SIO) inspects rigging for correct installation.
2. Give a HRST brief.

3. Supervise donning of individual HRST equipment.
4. Assign Master ropers to each point.
5. Demonstrate one complete cycle of the training to be accomplished.
6. Perform emergency procedures, if required.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**AIRCRAFT:** CH-46CH-53UH1N

**EQUIPMENT:** Communication equipment, HRST kit.

---

**MW-HRST-2130:** Rig a helicopter for a cable ladder

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Assigned as a Rope Master for the HRST operation.

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, SGTMAJ, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Rope Master, a helicopter, a HRST kit, and required safety personnel, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Ensuring systems, anchors and safety equipment are properly rigged, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect the aircraft and all attachment points.
2. Select equipment.
3. Inspect equipment.
4. Rig helicopter.
5. Ensure Safety Insert Officer (SIO) inspects rigging for correct installation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**AIRCRAFT:** CH-46, CH-53, UH1N, V-22

**EQUIPMENT:** MACK and HRST kit

---

**MW-HRST-2131:** Manage helicopter cable ladder operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Assigned as a Rope Master for the HRST operation

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, SGTMAJ, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Rope Master, HRST kit, required safety personnel, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Organize and control, personnel and equipment, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Ensure Safety Insert Officer (SIO) inspects rigging for correct installation.
2. Give a HRST brief.
3. Supervise donning of individual HRST equipment.
4. Assign Master ropers to each point.
5. Demonstrate one complete cycle of the training to be accomplished.
6. Perform emergency procedures, if required.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**AIRCRAFT:** CH-46, CH-53, UH1N, V-22

**EQUIPMENT:** Communication equipment, HRST kit

---

**MW-HRST-2132:** Perform the duties of a Safety Insert Officer (SIO)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Assigned as a Safety Insert Officer for the HRST operation

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, SGTMAJ, WO-1, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a helicopter, a HRST kit, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Ensuring all systems, anchors, and safety equipment are rigged, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Inspect all rigging for proper installation.
2. Give final clearance for all HRST operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCO 3500.42 Marine Corps HRST Policy and Program Administration
2. MCRP 3-11.4A Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST) Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**EQUIPMENT:** Communication equipment, HRST kit

---

**MWI-ENVR-2203:** Develop operational risk management for mountain/cold weather training

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Mountain Warfare Instructor, a specific training site, an event, in a mountain/cold weather environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Incorporating the principles of "BE SAFE MARINE", in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify hazards within a training site.
2. Assess local risks.
3. Make control decisions.
4. Implement controls.
5. Supervise training.
6. Complete the Operational Risk Analysis worksheet.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
  2. MCO 3500.27A Operational Risk Management
  3. MCRP 3-35.1 Commanders guide to cold weather equipment
  4. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS
- 

**MWI-ENVR-2204:** Issue a local weather forecast

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Mountain Warfare Instructor, weather data, and a checklist, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Gathering weather data and generating a local forecast, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Collect meteorological data.
2. Determine local weather trends.
3. Create a weather forecast.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering
  2. FMFRP 3-29 U.S. Navy Oceanographic And Meteorological Support System Manual
  3. The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education
- 

**MWI-MOVE-2206:** Operate an over-the-snow grooming vehicle

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a snow grooming vehicle, in a snow covered environment, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** To provide improved over-the-snow mobility, and reduce avalanche hazard, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Conduct operations checks.
2. Operate groomer in various snow depths.
3. Operate on ice.
4. Operate on different slopes.
5. Wear seatbelt/PPE.
6. Operate in various snow depths.
7. Operate on ice.
8. Operate on different slopes.
9. Conduct during operations checks.
10. Plow snow to open roads and allow the mobility of the units all terrain vehicles.
11. Groom roads.

**REFERENCE:**

1. MCRP 3-35.1A SMALL UNIT LEADER'S GUIDE TO COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

Facility Code 17907 Tracked Vehicle Drivers Course

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** Operators License required.

---

**MWI-MOVE-2207:** Conduct crevasse rescue training

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Mountain Warfare Instructor, a MACK, T/E, in a glaciated environment, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** Selecting the site and conducting ORM to mitigate potential risk to students, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Identify training site.
2. Conduct Operations Risk Management.
3. Implement safety measures.
4. Demonstrate crevasse rescue techniques as the rescuer.
5. Demonstrate crevasse self-rescue techniques.

**REFERENCE:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

---

**MWI-MOVE-2208:** Employ ski's

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** As a Mountain Warfare Instructor.

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Mountain Warfare Instructor, ski equipment, T/E, in a snow covered environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Using advanced skier techniques to negotiate snow covered terrain, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Make individual preparations.
2. Perform military ski instructor level star turns.
3. Perform military ski instructor level Kick turn.
4. Perform military ski instructor level side step.

5. Perform military ski instructor level forward side step.
6. Perform military ski instructor level herringbone.
7. Perform military ski instructor level double pole.
8. Perform military ski instructor level dynamic diagonal stride.
9. Perform military ski instructor level uphill dynamic diagonal stride.
10. Perform military ski instructor level diagonal V-Skate.
11. Perform military ski instructor level V-1 Skate.
12. Perform military ski instructor level kick turn.
13. Perform military ski instructor level straight run.
14. Perform military ski instructor level gliding wedge.
15. Perform military ski instructor level breaking wedge.
16. Perform military ski instructor level traverse.
17. Perform military ski instructor level step turns.
18. Perform military ski instructor level transition and absorption techniques.
19. Perform military ski instructor level side slip.
20. Perform military ski instructor level wedge turns.
21. Perform military ski instructor level wedge christie turns.
22. Perform military ski instructor level stem christie turns.
23. Perform military ski instructor level open parallel turns.
24. Perform military ski instructor level stem telemark turns.
25. Perform military ski instructor level basic telemark turns.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

MW-MOVE-1079

MW-MOVE-2069

**REFERENCES:**

1. 1-882409-21-3 Core Concepts: For Snowsports Instructors
2. 1-882409-22-1 Alpine Technical Manual: Skiing and Teaching Skills
3. 1-882409-26-4 Nordic Technical Manual: Skiing and Teaching Skills
4. Marine Corps Mountain Warfare Nordic Ski Instruction Manual

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Training area must be snow covered, groomed, track-set, and contain slopes between 5-35 degrees.

---

**MWI-MOVE-2209:** Conduct ski instruction (MS)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This task is conducted by a military ski instructor.

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Military ski instructor, ski equipment, T/E, in a snow covered environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To provide technical knowledge while supervising personnel in military skier techniques, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a site.
2. Demonstrate nordic ski maneuvers.
3. Analyze skier performance.
4. Perform skier diagnosis.
5. Develop a skier specific progression.
6. Coach skiers.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

MW-MOVE-1079

MWI-MOVE-2208

MW-MOVE-2069

**REFERENCES:**

1. 1-882409-21-3 Core Concepts: For Snowsports Instructors
2. 1-882409-22-1 Alpine Technical Manual: Skiing and Teaching Skills
3. 1-882409-26-4 Nordic Technical Manual: Skiing and Teaching Skills
4. MCRP 3-35.1B Combat Skiing
5. Marine Corps Mountain Warfare Nordic Ski Instruction Manual

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Training area must be snow covered, groomed, track-set, and contain slopes between 5-35 degrees.

---

**MWI-MOVE-2210:** Conduct ski instruction (MSI)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This task is conducted by a senior Military ski instructor (MSI) filling the billet of MSI Examiner.

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Military ski instructor, ski equipment, T/E, in a snow covered environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To provide technical knowledge while supervising personnel in Military ski instructor techniques, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a site.
2. Demonstrate Nordic ski maneuvers.
3. Analyze skier performance.
4. Perform skier diagnosis.
5. Develop skier specific progressions.
6. Coach skiers.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

MW-MOVE-1079

MWI-MOVE-2208

MW-MOVE-2069

**REFERENCES:**

1. 1-882409-21-3 Core Concepts: For Snowsports Instructors
2. 1-882409-22-1 Alpine Technical Manual: Skiing and Teaching Skills
3. 1-882409-26-4 Nordic Technical Manual: Skiing and Teaching Skills
4. MCRP 3-35.1B Combat Skiing
5. Marine Corps Mountain Warfare Nordic Ski Instruction Manual

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Training area must be snow covered, groomed, track-set, and contain slopes between 5-35 degrees.

---

**MWI-AVAL-2211:** Operate an electronic search device multiple burial

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** As a Mountain Warfare Instructor

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Mountain Warfare Instructor, a MCWIK, an electronic search device, during an avalanche rescue scenario, in a snow covered mountainous environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** To locate/recover one electronic device in a time limit of six minutes, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Determine search device functions.
2. Perform an operational test of the search device.
3. Choose avalanche rescue equipment.
4. Perform search techniques with an electronic search device.
5. Locate electronic search device.
6. Conduct following actions.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-364-3 The Avalanche Handbook
2. 0-89886-834-3 Staying Alive in Avalanche Terrain
3. 0-9685856-1-2 Backcountry Avalanche Awareness
4. The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

ROOMS/BUILDINGS: A classroom with computer aided graphics is preferred.

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education (AIARE) Certified.

---

MWI-AVAL-2212: Collect avalanche data

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 24 months

DESCRIPTION: As a Mountain Warfare Instructor.

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Mountain Warfare Instructor, a snow pit analysis kit, data collection tools, and snow covered mountainous environment, without the aid of references.

STANDARD: Recording and reporting the data to an avalanche forecaster, in accordance with the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct field weather observations.
2. Conduct field snow pack observations.
3. Conduct field snow stability tests.
4. Record field data in a data notebook.
5. Report field data to an avalanche forecaster.

REFERENCES:

1. 0-89886-364-3 The Avalanche Handbook
2. 0-89886-834-3 Staying Alive in Avalanche Terrain
3. 0-9685856-1-2 Backcountry Avalanche Awareness
4. 0-9760118-0-8 Snow, Weather, and Avalanches: Observational Guidelines for Avalanche Programs in the United States
5. The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

ROOMS/BUILDINGS: A classroom with computer aided graphics is preferred.

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: AIARE Certified.

---

MWI-AVAL-2213: Forecast avalanche hazard

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** As a Mountain warfare Instructor.

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a snow pit analysis kit, data collection tools, raw data from the field, and snow covered mountainous environment, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Collecting, receiving, and processing avalanche data to create a local avalanche forecast, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Collect field data.
2. Collect data from other sources.
3. Organize collected data.
4. Complete operational avalanche forecast form.
5. Maintain records.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-364-3 The Avalanche Handbook
2. 0-89886-834-3 Staying Alive in Avalanche Terrain
3. 0-9685856-1-2 Backcountry Avalanche Awareness
4. 0-9760118-0-8 Snow, Weather, and Avalanches: Observational Guidelines for Avalanche Programs in the United States
5. The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** A classroom with computer aided graphics is preferred.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** AIARE Certified.

---

**MWI-AVAL-2214:** Conduct avalanche control

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** As a Mountain Warfare Instructor

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Mountain Warfare Instructor, explosive charges, and snow covered mountainous environment, without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** By building, placing, and detonating charges to initiate avalanches as part of a snow safety plan, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select site.
2. Organize support requirements.
3. Implement safety/control measures.
4. Build charge/s.
5. Deploy charge/s.
6. Conduct follow-on actions.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-364-3 The Avalanche Handbook
2. The ABC's of Avalanche Safety, 2d Edition, La Chapelle E.D., 1985
3. The American Institute for Avalanche Research and Education

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**ROOMS/BUILDINGS:** A classroom with computer aided graphics is preferred.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:** AIARE Certified.

---

**MW-TRST-2215:** Employ rock protection

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Marine, a MACK, T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of reference.

**STANDARD:** To establish protection points for climbing or anchors, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Choose rock protection.
2. Organize rock protection for use.
3. Place pitons.
4. Place bolts/hangers.
5. Assess the security of pitons.
6. Assess the security of bolts/hangers.

**REFERENCE:**

1. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

---

**MWI-CLMB-2216:** Lead a multi-pitch climb

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Assigned as a Mountain Warfare Instructor.

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Mountain Warfare Instructor, T/E, climbing shoes, in an environment, with vertical to near vertical obstacles, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** On a cliff no less than 150ft, graded 5.6 under the American Yosemite Decimal System, in accordance with the references.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a route.
2. Make personal preparations.
3. Select equipment.
4. Organize equipment.
5. Establish a belay.
6. Communicate with climbing commands.
7. Employ protection.
8. Perform a belay change-over.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
3. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
4. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**EQUIPMENT:** Climbing rack, climbing rope, and helmets.

---

**MWI-CLMB-2218:** Lead climb snow/ice

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Assigned as a Mountain Warfare Instructor.

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Mountain Warfare Instructor, a MACK, T/E, in any environment, and without the aid of references.

**STANDARD:** Overcoming near vertical snow/ice more than 20 ft in height, in accordance with the reference.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Select a route.
2. Implement safety/control measures.
3. Select equipment.
4. Organize equipment.
5. Employ protection.
6. Establish a belay.
7. Belay follow-on climber/s.

**REFERENCES:**

1. 0-89886-749-5 Alpine Climbing: Techniques to Take You Higher
2. 0-89886-827-0 Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills
3. AMGA Technical Handbook for Professional Mountain Guides
4. FM 3-97.61 Military Mountaineering

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17413 Field Training Area

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** To properly conduct this training. The individual will need gentle to steep angled snow/ice covered terrain.

MCWO T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX A

FUNCTIONAL AREA MATRIX

1000. **FUNCTIONAL AREA MATRIX.** The Functional Area Table includes the functional area description.

| FUNCTIONAL<br>AREA CODE | DESCRIPTION  |
|-------------------------|--|
| ANPK                    | <u>Animal Packing.</u> Those tasks pertaining to the packing and employment of pack animals commonly used throughout the world.  |
| AVAL                    | <u>Avalanche.</u> Those tasks pertaining to Avalanche terrain recognition, hazard assessment and rescue.   |
| CLEQ                    | <u>Clothing and Equipment.</u> Those tasks pertaining to employment of specialized clothing and equipment used in cold weather and mountainous operations, to include technical (rope and hardware) equipment.   |
| CLMB                    | <u>Climbing.</u> Those tasks pertaining to movement over vertical to near vertical obstacles (rock/earth, snow/ice and urban) that requires more than two points (hands) of contact to negotiate.  |
| ENG                     | <u>Engineer.</u> Those tasks pertaining to engineer techniques and procedures practiced in a snow/ice covered environment to include avalanche initiation.   |
| ENVR                    | <u>Environmental.</u> Those tasks required to survive and counteract the environmental factors found in a cold weather and/or mountains.   |
| HRST                    | <u>Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques (HRST).</u> Those tasks used only in helicopter suspension to include fast roping and SPIE. Knots, anchors and rappelling are found in TRST.  |
| MOVE                    | <u>Movement.</u> Those tasks pertaining to movement over rugged, mountainous and snow-covered terrain. This also includes negotiation of water obstacles.  |
| SERE                    | <u>Survival Evasion Resistance Escape (SERE).</u> Those tasks pertaining to survival, evasion, resistance and escape in any environment.   |
| TRST                    | <u>Tactical Rope Suspension Techniques (TRST).</u> Those tasks pertaining to the employment of rope and rope systems. This includes knots, anchors, belays, top ropes, fixed ropes, rope bridging and any other technical use of rope that will be used to support a human load. |

MCWO T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX B

TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

Terms in this glossary are subject to change as applicable orders and directives are revised. Terms established by Marine Corps orders or directives take precedence after definitions found in Joint Pub 1-02, *DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms*.

A

**After Action Review.** A professional discussion of training events conducted after all training to promote learning among training participants. The formality and scope increase with the command level and size of the training evolution. For longer exercises, they should be planned for at predetermined times during an exercise. The results of the AAR shall be recorded on an after action report and forwarded to higher headquarters. The commander and higher headquarters use the results of an AAR to reallocate resources, reprioritize their training plan, and plan for future training.

**Assessment.** An informal judgment of the unit's proficiency and resources made by a commander or trainer to gain insight into the unit's overall condition. It serves as the basis for the midrange plan. Commanders make frequent use of these determinations during the course of the combat readiness cycle in order to adjust, prioritize or modify training events and plans.

C

**Chaining.** A process that enables unit leaders to effectively identify subordinate collective events and individual events that support a specific collective event. For example, collective training events at the 4000-level are directly supported by collective events at the 3000-level. Utilizing the building block approach to progressive training, these collective events are further supported by individual training events at the 1000 and 2000-levels. When a higher-level event by its nature requires the completion of lower level events, they are "chained"; Sustainment credit is given for all lower level events chained to a higher event.

**Collective Event.** A clearly defined, discrete, and measurable activity, action, or event (i.e., task) that requires organized team or unit performance and leads to accomplishment of a mission or function. A collective task is derived from unit missions or higher-level collective tasks. Task accomplishment requires performance of procedures composed of supporting collective or individual tasks. A collective task describes the exact performance a group must perform in the field under actual operational conditions. The term "collective" does not necessarily infer that a unit accomplishes the event. A unit, such as a squad or platoon conducting an attack; may accomplish a collective event or, it may be accomplished by an individual to accomplish a unit mission, such as a battalion supply officer

completing a reconciliation of the battalion's CMR. Thus, many collective events will have titles that are the same as individual events; however, the standard and condition will be different because the scope of the collective event is broader.

**Collective Training Standards (CTS).** Criteria that specify mission and functional area unit proficiency standards for combat, combat support, and combat service support units. They include tasks, conditions, standards, evaluator instruction, and key indicators. CTS are found within collective training events in T&R Manuals.

**Combat Readiness Cycle.** The combat readiness cycle depicts the relationships within the building block approach to training. The combat readiness cycle progresses from T&R Manual individual core skills training, to the accomplishment of collective training events, and finally, to a unit's participation in a contingency or actual combat. The combat readiness cycle demonstrates the relationship of core capabilities to unit combat readiness. Individual core skills training and the training of collective events lead to unit proficiency and the ability to accomplish the unit's stated mission.

**Combat Readiness Percentage (CRP).** The CRP is a quantitative numerical value used in calculating collective training readiness based on the E-coded events that support the unit METL. CRP is a concise measure of unit training accomplishments. This numerical value is only a snapshot of training readiness at a specific time. As training is conducted, unit CRP will continuously change.

**Component Events.** Component events are the major tasks involved in accomplishing a collective event. Listing these tasks guide Marines toward the accomplishment of the event and help evaluators determine if the task has been done to standard. These events may be lower-level collective or individual events that must be accomplished.

**Condition.** The condition describes the training situation or environment under which the training event or task will take place. Expands on the information in the title by identifying when, where, and why the event or task will occur and what materials, personnel, equipment, environmental provisions, and safety constraints must be present to perform the event or task in a real-world environment. Commanders can modify the conditions of the event to best prepare their Marines to accomplish the assigned mission (e.g. in a desert environment; in a mountain environment; etc.).

**Core Competency.** Core competency is the comprehensive measure of a unit's ability to accomplish its assigned MET. It serves as the foundation of the T&R Program. Core competencies are those unit core capabilities and individual core skills that support the commander's METL and T/O mission statement. Individual competency is exhibited through demonstration of proficiency in specified core tasks and core plus tasks. Unit proficiency is measured through collective tasks.

**Core Capabilities.** Core capabilities are the essential functions a unit must be capable of performing during extended contingency/combat operations. Core unit capabilities are based upon mission essential tasks derived from operational plans; doctrine and established tactics; techniques and procedures.

**Core Plus Capabilities.** Core plus capabilities are advanced capabilities that are environment, mission, or theater specific. Core plus capabilities may entail high-risk, high-cost training for missions that are less likely to be assigned in combat.

**Core Plus Skills.** Core plus skills are those advanced skills that are environment, mission, rank, or billet specific. 2000-level training is designed to make Marines proficient in core skills in a specific billet or at a specified rank at the Combat Ready level. 3000-8000-level training produces combat leaders and fully qualified section members at the Combat Qualified level. Marines trained at the Combat Qualified level are those the commanding officer feels are capable of accomplishing unit-level missions and of directing the actions of subordinates. Many core plus tasks are learned via MOJT, while others form the base for curriculum in career level MOS courses taught by the formal school.

**Core Skills.** Core skills are those essential basic skills that "make" a Marine and qualify that Marine for an MOS. They are the 1000-level skills introduced in entry-level training at formal schools and refined in operational units.

#### D

**Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS).** A comprehensive readiness reporting system that evaluates readiness on the basis of the actual missions and capabilities assigned to the forces. It is a capabilities-based, adaptive, near real-time reporting system for the entire Department of Defense.

**Deferred Event.** A T&R event that a commanding officer may postpone when in his or her judgment, a lack of logistic support, ammo, ranges, or other training assets requires a temporary exemption. CRP cannot be accrued for deferred "E-Coded" events.

**Delinquent Event.** An event becomes delinquent when a Marine or unit exceeds the sustainment interval for that particular event. The individual or unit must update the delinquent event by first performing all prerequisite events. When the unit commander deems that performing all prerequisite is unattainable, then the delinquent event will be re-demonstrated under the supervision of the appropriate evaluation authority.

#### E

**E-Coded Event.** An "E-Coded" event is a collective T&R event that is a noted indicator of capability or, a noted Collective skill that contributes to the unit's ability to perform the supported MET. As such, only "E-Coded" events are assigned a CRP value and used to calculate a unit's CRP.

**Entry-level training.** Pipeline training that equips students for service with the Marine Operating Forces.

**Evaluation.** Evaluation is a continuous process that occurs at all echelons, during every phase of training and can be both formal and informal. Evaluations ensure that Marines and units are capable of conducting their

combat mission. Evaluation results are used to reallocate resources, reprioritize the training plan, and plan for future training.

**Event (Training).** 1) An event is a significant training occurrence that is identified, expanded and used as a building block and potential milestone for a unit's training. An event may include formal evaluations. 2) An event within the T&R Program can be an individual training evolution, a collective training evolution or both. Through T&R events, the unit commander ensures that individual Marines and the unit progress from a combat capable status to a Fully Combat Qualified (FCQ) status.

**Event Component.** The major procedures (i.e., actions) that must occur to perform a Collective Event to standard.

**Exercise Commander (EC).** The Commanding General, Marine Expeditionary Force or his appointee will fill this role, unless authority is delegated to the respective commander of the Division, Wing, or FSSG. Responsibilities and functions of the EC include: 1) designate unit(s) to be evaluated, 2) may designate an exercise director, 3) prescribe exercise objectives and T&R events to be evaluated, 4) coordinate with commands or agencies external to the Marine Corps and adjacent Marine Corps commands, when required.

**Exercise Director (ED).** Designated by the EC to prepare, conduct, and report all evaluation results. Responsibilities and functions of the ED include: 1) Publish a letter of instruction (LOI) that: delineates the T&R events to be evaluated, establishes timeframe of the exercise, lists responsibilities of various elements participating in the exercise, establishes safety requirements/guidelines, and lists coordinating instructions. 2) Designate the TEC and TECG to operate as the central control agency for the exercise. 3) Assign evaluators, to include the senior evaluator, and ensure that those evaluators are properly trained. 4) Develop the general exercise scenario taking into account any objectives/events prescribed by the EC. 5) Arrange for all resources to include: training areas, airspace, aggressor forces, and other required support.

## I

**Individual Readiness.** The individual training readiness of each Marine is measured by the number of individual events required and completed for the rank or billet currently held.

**Individual Training.** Training that applies to individual Marines. Examples include rifle qualifications and HMMWV driver licensing.

**Individual Training Standards (ITS).** Specifies training tasks and standards for each MOS or specialty within the Marine Corps. In most cases, once an MOS or community develops a T&R, the ITS order will be cancelled. However, most communities will probably fold a large portion of their ITS into their new T&R manual.

## M

**Marine Corps Combat Readiness and Evaluation System (MCCRES).** An evaluation system designed to provide commanders with a comprehensive set of mission performance standards from which training programs can be developed; and

through which the efficiency and effectiveness of training can be evaluated. The Ground T&R Program will eventually replace MCCRES.

**Marine Corps Ground Training and Readiness (T&R) Program.** The T&R Program is the Marine Corps' primary tool for planning and conducting training, for planning and conducting training evaluation, and for assessing training readiness. The program will provide the commander with standardized programs of instruction for units within the ground combat, combat support, and combat service support communities. It consolidates the ITS, CTS, METL and other individual and unit training management tools. T&R is a program of standards that systematizes commonly accepted skills, is open to innovative change, and above all, tailors the training effort to the unit's mission. Further, T&R serves as a training guide and provides commanders an immediate assessment of unit combat readiness by assigning a CRP to key training events. In short, the T&R Program is a building block approach to training that maximizes flexibility and produces the best-trained Marines possible.

**Mission Essential Task(s) MET(s).** A MET is a collective task in which an organization must be proficient in order to accomplish an appropriate portion of its wartime mission(s). MET listings are the foundation for the T&R manual; all events in the T&R manual support a MET.

**Mission Essential Task List (METL).** Descriptive training document that provides units a clear, war fighting focused description of collective actions necessary to achieve wartime mission proficiency. The service-level METL, that which is used as the foundation of the T&R manual, is developed using Marine Corps doctrine, operational plans, T/Os, UJTL, UNTL, and MCTL. For community based T&R manuals, an occupational field METL is developed to focus the community's collective training standards. Commanders develop their unit METL from the service-level METL, operational plans, contingency plans, and SOPs.

**Mission Performance Standards (MPS).** Criteria that specify mission and functional area unit proficiency standards for combat, combat support and combat service support units. They include tasks, conditions, standards, evaluator instruction, and key indicators. MPS are contained within the MCCRES volumes. The MCCRES volumes are being replaced by T&R Manuals. Collective events will replace MPS.

O

**Operational Readiness (DOD, NATO).** OR is the capability of a unit/formation, ship, weapon system, or equipment to perform the missions or functions for which it is organized or designed. May be used in a general sense or to express a level or degree of readiness.

P

**Performance step.** Performance steps are included in the components of an Individual T&R Event. They are the major procedures (i.e., actions) a unit Marine must accomplish to perform an individual event to standard. They describe the procedure the task performer must take to perform the task under operational conditions and provide sufficient information for a task performer to perform the procedure (may necessitate identification of supporting steps, procedures, or actions in outline form). Performance steps

follow a logical progression and should be followed sequentially, unless otherwise stated. Normally, performance steps are listed only for 1000-level individual events (those that are taught in the entry-level MOS school). Listing performance steps is optional if the steps are already specified in a published reference.

**Prerequisite Event.** Prerequisites are the academic training and/or T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the event.

## R

**Readiness (DOD).** Readiness is the ability of U.S. military forces to fight and meet the demands of the national military strategy. Readiness is the synthesis of two distinct but interrelated levels: a) Unit readiness--The ability to provide capabilities required by combatant commanders to execute assigned missions. This is derived from the ability of each unit to deliver the outputs for which it was designed. b) Joint readiness--The combatant commander's ability to integrate and synchronize ready combat and support forces to execute assigned missions.

## S

**Section Skill Tasks.** Section skills are those competencies directly related to unit functioning. They are group rather than individual in nature, and require participation by a section (S-1, S-2, S-3, etc).

**Simulation Training.** Simulators provide the additional capability to develop and hone core and core plus skills. Accordingly, the development of simulator training events for appropriate T&R syllabi can help maintain valuable combat resources while reducing training time and cost. Therefore, in cases where simulator fidelity and capabilities are such that simulator training closely matches that of actual training events, T&R Manual developers may include the option of using simulators to accomplish the training. CRP credit will be earned for E-coded simulator events based on assessment of relative training event performance.

**Standard.** A standard is a statement that establishes criteria for how well a task or learning objective must be performed. The standard specifies how well, completely, or accurately a process must be performed or product produced. For higher-level collective events, it describes why the event is being done and the desired end-state of the event. Standards become more specific for lower-level events and outline the accuracy, time limits, sequencing, quality, product, process, restrictions, etc., that indicate the minimum acceptable level of performance required of the event. At a minimum, both collective and individual training standards consist of a task, the condition under which the task is to be performed, and the evaluation criteria that will be used to verify that the task has been performed to a satisfactory level.

**Sustainment Training.** Periodic retraining or demonstration of an event required maintaining the minimum acceptable level of proficiency or capability required to accomplish a training objective. Sustainment training goes beyond the entry-level and is designed to maintain or further develop proficiency in a given set of skills.

**Systems Approach to Training (SAT).** An orderly process for analyzing, designing, developing, implementing, and evaluating a unit's training program to ensure the unit, and the Marines of that unit acquire the knowledge and skills essential for the successful conduct of the unit's wartime missions.

## T

**Training Task.** This describes a direct training activity that pertains to an individual Marine. A task is composed of 3 major components: a description of what is to be done, a condition, and a standard.

**Technical Exercise Controller (TEC).** The TEC is appointed by the ED, and usually comes from his staff or a subordinate command. The TEC is the senior evaluator within the TEGC and should be of equal or higher grade than the commander(s) of the unit(s) being evaluated. The TEC is responsible for ensuring that the evaluation is conducted following the instructions contained in this order and MCO 1553.3A. Specific T&R manuals are used as the source for evaluation criteria.

**Tactical Exercise Control Group (TECG).** A TECG is formed to provide subject matter experts in the functional areas being evaluated. The benefit of establishing a permanent TECG is to have resident, dedicated evaluation authority experience, and knowledgeable in evaluation technique. The responsibilities and functions of the TECG include: 1) developing a detailed exercise scenario to include the objectives and events prescribed by the EC/ED in the exercise LOI; 2) conducting detailed evaluator training prior to the exercise; 3) coordinating and controlling role players and aggressors; 4) compiling the evaluation data submitted by the evaluators and submitting required results to the ED; 5) preparing and conducting a detailed exercise debrief for the evaluated unit(s).

**Training Plan.** Training document that outlines the general plan for the conduct of individual and collective training in an organization for specified periods of time.

## U

**Unit CRP.** Unit CRP is a percentage of the E-coded collective events that support the unit METL accomplished by the unit. Unit CRP is the average of all MET CRP.

**Unit Evaluation.** All units in the Marine Corps must be evaluated, either formally or informally, to ensure they are capable of conducting their combat mission. Informal evaluations should take place during all training events. The timing of formal evaluations is critical and should, when appropriate, be directly related to the units' operational deployment cycle. Formal evaluations should take place after the unit has been staffed with the majority of its personnel, has had sufficient time to train to individual and collective standards, and early enough in the training cycle so there is sufficient time to correctly identified weaknesses prior to deployment. All combat units and units' task organized for combat require formal evaluations prior to operational deployments.

**Unit Training Management (UTM).** Unit training management is the use of the SAT and Marine Corps training principles in a manner that maximizes training

results and focuses the training priorities of the unit on its wartime mission. UTM governs the major peacetime training activity of the Marine Corps and applies to all echelons of the Total Force.

**W**

**Waived Event.** An event that is waived by a commanding officer when in his or her judgment, previous experience or related performance satisfies the requirement of a particular event.

MCWO T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX C

GLOSSARY OF SPECIALIZED TERMS

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| <b>AIARE</b>             | American Institute of Avalanche Research and Education   |
| <b>Abseil</b>            | The process by which a climber may descend on a fixed rope. Also known as Rappel.  |
| <b>Adze</b>              | A thin blade mounted perpendicular to the handle on an ice axe that can be used for chipping.  |
| <b>Alpine start</b>      | To make an efficient start on a long climb by packing all your gear the previous evening and starting early in the morning, usually before sunrise.  |
| <b>Altitude sickness</b> | A medical condition that is often observed at high altitudes. Also known as Acute mountain sickness or AMS.  |
| <b>Anchor</b>            | Any piece of protection put into the rock to arrest a climbers fall. An arrangement of one or (usually) more pieces of gear set up to support the weight of a belay or top rope.   |
| <b>Approach</b>          | The path or route to the start of a technical climb. Although this is generally a walk or, at most, a scramble it is occasionally as hazardous as the climb itself.  |
| <b>Arête</b>             | The outside corner of rock. See also dihedral.   |
| <b>Ascender</b>          | A device for ascending on a rope. One type of mechanical ascender is the Jumar.  |
| <b>ATC</b>               | A proprietary type of belay device. (ATC also stands for Air traffic controller.)  |
| <b>Balance Climbing</b>  | The practice of climbing on vertical to near vertical obstacles without a rope.  |
| <b>Belay</b>             | To protect a climber from falling using a rope, friction, and an anchor.   |
| <b>Belay device</b>      | A mechanical device used to create friction when belaying by putting bends in the rope. Many types of belay device exist, including ATC, grigri, Reverso, Sticht plate, eight, tuber, and the Munter hitch. Some belay devices may also be used as descenders. |
| <b>Bergschrund</b>       | A crevasse that forms on the upper portion of a glacier where the moving section pulls away from the headwall.   |
| <b>Bivy</b>              | A camp, or the act of camping, from "bivouac."   |
| <b>Bolt</b>              | An anchor-point permanently drilled into the rock.   |
| <b>Bouldering</b>        | The practice of climbing on large boulders. Typically this is close to the ground, so protection takes the form of crash pads and spotting instead of belay ropes. (See Balance Climbing)  |
| <b>Buttress</b>          | A prominent feature that juts out from a rock or mountain.   |
| <b>Cam</b>               | To affix using counter-pressure. : A spring-loaded device used to place protection. See Spring loaded camming device. Campus board   |
| <b>Carabiner</b>         | Metal rings with spring-loaded gates, used as connectors. Also known as crab or biner. (Karabiner)   |
| <b>Chalk</b>             | A compound used to improve grip by absorbing sweat. It is actually gymnastics chalk, usually magnesium carbonate.  |
| <b>Chimney</b>           | A rock cleft with vertical sides mostly parallel, large enough to fit the climbers body into. To climb such a structure, The climber often uses his head, back and feet to apply opposite pressure on the vertical walls.                                      |
| <b>Chock</b>             | A mechanical device, or a wedge, used to attach anchors into cracks.   |

|                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>Clean</b>            | To remove equipment from a route.   |
| <b>Climbing command</b> | A short phrase used for communication between a climber and a belayer.  |
| <b>Col</b>              | A small pass between two peaks.   |
| <b>Couloir</b>          | A steep gully or gorge frequently filled with snow or ice.  |
| <b>Cornice</b>          | An overhanging edge of snow on a ridge.   |
| <b>Crag</b>             | A small area with climbing routes, often just a small cliff face or a few boulders.   |
| <b>Crampons</b>         | Metal framework with spikes attached to boots to increase safety on snow and ice.   |
| <b>Crux</b>             | The most difficult portion of a climb.  |
| <b>Daisy chain</b>      | A type of sling with multiple sewn, or tied, loops. In many situations this can be more versatile than a normal sling.  |
| <b>Deadman</b>          | A dynamic climbing technique in which the hold is grabbed at the apex of upward motion. This technique places minimal strain on both the hold and the arms.                   |
| <b>Deadman anchor</b>   | An object buried into snow to serve as an anchor for an attached rope. One common type of such an anchor is the snow fluke.   |
| <b>Deck</b>             | The ground. To hit the ground, usually the outcome of a fall.   |
| <b>Descender</b>        | A device for controlled descent on a rope. Many belay devices may be used as descenders, including ATCs, eights, or even carabiners.  |
| <b>Dihedral</b>         | The inside corner of rock. See also arête.  |
| <b>Dynamic rope</b>     | A slightly elastic rope that softens falls to some extent. Also tend to be damaged less severely by heavy loads. Compare with static rope.                                    |
| <b>Eight</b>            | A belay device or descender. Named from its appearance as the digit "8".  |
| <b>Fixed rope</b>       | A rope which has a fixed attachment point. Commonly used for abseiling or aid climbing.   |
| <b>Follow</b>           | What the second does. (TRST following an Assault Climber)   |
| <b>Friction</b>         | Climbing technique relying on the friction between the sloped rock and the sole of the shoe to support the climber's weight, as opposed using holds or edges, cracks, etc.    |
| <b>Friend</b>           | A name brand of a type of spring loaded camming device (SLCD), sometimes used to refer to any type of spring loaded camming device.   |
| <b>Gear sling</b>       | A gear sling is usually used by climbers when they have too much gear to fit on the gear loops of their harnesses.  |
| <b>Glissade</b>         | A usually voluntary act of sliding down a steep slope of snow.  |
| <b>Grade</b>            | Intended as an objective measure of the technical difficulty of a particular climb or bouldering problem. More often is highly subjective, however.                           |
| <b>GriGri</b>           | A belay device designed to be easy to use and safe for beginners because it is self-locking under load. Invented and manufactured by Petzl.                                   |
| <b>HACE</b>             | High Altitude Cerebral Edema - a severe, and often fatal, form of altitude sickness.  |
| <b>HAPE</b>             | High Altitude Pulmonary Edema - a serious form of altitude sickness.  |
| <b>Harness</b>          | See climbing harness. A sewn nylon webbing device worn around the waist and thighs that is designed to allow a person to safely hang suspended in the air.                    |
| <b>Headwall</b>         | The region of a cliff or rock face that steepens dramatically.  |
| <b>Hexcentric</b>       | A protective device. It is an eccentric hexagonal nut attached to a wire loop. The nut is inserted into a crack and it holds through counter-pressure. Often just termed Hex. |
| <b>HRST</b>             | Helicopter Rope Suspension Techniques and/or Helicopter Rope Suspension Technician  |

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>HRST Kit</b>          | Equipment used in Helicopter HRST Operations  |
| <b>Ice axe</b>           | A tool for safety and balance and arresting a fall.   |
| <b>Ice screw</b>         | A screw used to protect a climb over steep ice or for setting up a crevasse rescue system. The strongest and most reliable is the modern tubular ice screw which ranges in length from 18 to 23 cm.   |
| <b>Jumar</b>             | A type of mechanical ascender. To ascend a rope using a mechanical ascender.  |
| <b>Knots</b>             | Climbers rely on many different knots for anchoring oneself to a mountain, joining two ropes together, slings for climbing up the rope, etc.  |
| <b>Lead climbing</b>     | A form of climbing in which the climber places anchors and attaches the belay rope as they climb.   |
| <b>Leader Fall</b>       | A fall while Lead climbing. A fall from above the climbers last piece of protection. The falling leader will fall at least twice the distance back to her last piece, plus slack and rope stretch. Only (Assault Climbers) A climbing move that involves pulling on the hands while pushing on the feet   |
| <b>Locking carabiner</b> | A carabiner with a locking gate, to prevent accidental release of the rope.   |
| <b>Mantle</b>            | A move used to surmount a ledge or feature in the rock in the absence of any useful holds directly above. It involves pushing down on a ledge or feature instead of pulling down. In ice climbing, a mantle is done by moving the hands from the shaft to the top of the ice tool and pushing down on the head of the tool. The external covering of a climbing rope. Climbing ropes use kernmantle construction consisting of a kern (or core) for strength and an external sheath called the mantle |
| <b>MACK</b>              | Marine Assault Climbers Kit. Contains the equipment necessary for 8 TRSTs and/or Assault Climbers.  |
| <b>MCWIK</b>             | Marine Cold Weather Infantry Kit. Consists of a sled/tent/stove system along with other cold weather team equipment.  |
| <b>Move</b>              | Application of a specific climbing technique to progress on a climb. Multi-pitch climbing. Climbing on routes that are too long for a single belay rope   |
| <b>Munter hitch</b>      | A simple hitch that is often used for belaying without a mechanical belay device. Otherwise known as an Italian hitch or a Friction hitch.  |
| <b>Névé</b>              | Permanent granular ice formed by repeated freeze-thaw cycles. No-hand rest. An entirely leg-supported resting position during climbing that does not require hands on the rock  |
| <b>Nut</b>               | A metal wedge attached to a wire loop that is inserted into cracks for protection. See hexcentric.  |
| <b>Pickets</b>           | Long, tubular rods driven into snow to provide a quick anchor.  |
| <b>Pitch</b>             | In the strictest climbing definition, a pitch is considered one rope length (50-60 meters). However, in guide books and route descriptions, a pitch is the portion of a climb between two belay points.   |
| <b>Piton</b>             | A flat or bent metal blade of steel which incorporates a clipping hole for a carabiner in its body. A piton is typically used in "aid-climbing" and is hammered into a thin crack in the rock.  |
| <b>Plunge step</b>       | An aggressive step pattern for descending on hard or steep angle snow.  |
| <b>Protection</b>        | Process of setting equipment or anchors for safety. Equipment or anchors used for preventing falls. Commonly known as Pro.  |
| <b>Prusik</b>            | A knot used for ascending a rope. It is named after Dr Karl Prusik, the Austrian mountaineer who developed this knot in 1931. To use a Prusik knot for ascending a rope.  |
| <b>Quickdraws</b>        | Quickdraws (draws, as referred to by most climbers) are used by climbers to attach ropes to bolt anchors or protection. They allow the rope to run-through with minimal friction.   |

|                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| <b>Rack</b>          | The part of a harness from which equipment is hung, consisting of several stiff plastic loops attached to the waistband. The set of equipment carried up a climb.  |
| <b>Rappel</b>        | The process by which a climber may descend on a fixed rope using a friction device. Also known as Abseil or roping down.   |
| <b>Rest step</b>     | Energy-saving technique where unweighted leg is rested between each forward step.  |
| <b>Rope</b>          | Climbing ropes typically consist of a core of long twisted fibers and an outer sheath of woven colored fibers (referred to as kernmantle construction). The core provides most of the tensile strength, while the sheath is a durable layer that protects the core and gives the rope desirable handling characteristics. The ropes used for climbing can be divided into two classes: dynamic ropes and static ropes. |
| <b>Route</b>         | The path of a particular climb, or a predefined set of moves.  |
| <b>Runner</b>        | Another term for sling.  |
| <b>Runout</b>        | The span between two points of protection. A long portion of a route without adequate protection.  |
| <b>Saddle</b>        | A high pass between two peaks, larger than a col.  |
| <b>Scrambling</b>    | Non-technical climbing.  |
| <b>Scree</b>         | Loose, broken rock that climbers can never avoid.  |
| <b>Second</b>        | A climber who follows the lead, or first, climber. (TRST)  |
| <b>Self-Arrest</b>   | The act of planting your ice axe into the snow during a rapid, uncontrolled descent in order to make an emergency stop.  |
| <b>Serac</b>         | A large ice tower.   |
| <b>SKED</b>          | A stretcher system manufactured by Skedco Inc. and utilized by the MCMWTC instructor staff to evacuate casualties.   |
| <b>SLCD</b>          | Abbreviation for spring loaded camming device, a type of protection device. These are better known by the term cam.  |
| <b>Sling</b>         | Webbing sewn, or tied, into a loop.  |
| <b>Smearing</b>      | To use friction on the sole of the climbing shoe, in the absence of any useful footholds.  |
| <b>Snow fluke</b>    | An angled aluminum plate attached to a metal cable. The fluke is buried into snow, typically used as a deadman anchor.   |
| <b>Solo climbing</b> | Climbing without any protection (free solo) or setting and cleaning ones own protection on an ascent.  |
| <b>Static</b>        | Of a style of climbing or specific move, not dynamic.  |
| <b>Static rope</b>   | A non-elastic rope. Compare with dynamic rope.   |
| <b>Sticht plate</b>  | A belay device consisting of a flat plate with a pair of slots. Named after the inventor Franz Sticht.   |
| <b>Stopper</b>       | A wedge-shaped nut. A knot used to prevent the rope running through a piece of equipment.  |
| <b>Summit</b>        | The high point of a mountain or peak. To reach such a high point.  |
| <b>Swami Wrap</b>    | A kind of proto- climbing harnesses consisting or a long length of tubular webbing wrapped several times around the climbers body and secured with a water knot.   |
| <b>TRST</b>          | Tactical Rope Suspension Techniques and/or Tactical Rope Suspension Technician.  |
| <b>Top rope</b>      | To belay from a fixed anchor point above the climb.  |
| <b>Traverse</b>      | To climb in a horizontal direction. A feature of a rock that allows relatively easy progress in a horizontal direction. A Tyrolean traverse is crossing a chasm using a rope anchored at both ends. A pendulum traverse involves swinging from a protection point.   |
| <b>"V"-grade</b>     | A technical grading system for bouldering problems, invented by John Sherman.  |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>Webbing</b>                         | Hollow and flat rope, mainly used to make runners and slings.   |
| <b>Wires</b>                           | A slang term for nuts.  |
| <b>Yosemite<br/>Decimal<br/>System</b> | A numerical system for rating the difficulty of walks, hikes, and climbs in the United States. The rock climbing (5.x) portion of the scale is the most common climb grading system used in the US. The scale runs from 5.0 to 5.15a (as of 2005) |
| <b>Z-pulley</b>                        | A particular configuration of rope, anchors, and pulleys typically used to extricate a climber after falling into a crevasse.   |

MCWO T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX D

CLIMBING CLASSIFICATION AND GRADES

The Yosemite Decimal System consists of five general classes; the fifth being subdivided with a decimal notation, but it is generally accepted that some ratings are too high or too low.

The class of a route is derived from its "crux" or hardest move. If you hike a class 2 trail from point A to point B, and are required to scale a 20 foot wall of rock (class 4) along the way, then you hiked a class 4 trail regardless of the normal exposure.

Here are the five classes, where each bullet represents a different opinion as to what the class actually represents.

**Class 1:** The movement is on a trail.

**Class 2:** The movement is cross-country or across easy boulder fields where route-finding is necessary.

**Class 3:** The movement requires the use of hands, but is not hard enough to warrant a rope (scrambling).

**Class 4:** The movement is on steep terrain and requires a roped belay.

**Class 5:** Involves technical moves and requires protective hardware. This is further broken down to numbers 5.0-5.13. 5.0 means that there are ample foot/handholds. 5.12 is vertical. 5.13 is vertical with areas of overhanging rock. (See 5th Class Yosemite Decimal System below)

**Class 6:** The rope bears the climber's weight on purpose, rope ladders and equipment used to aid.

### **5<sup>th</sup> Class Yosemite Decimal System**

The experienced climber, having accomplished or attempted free climbs of varying degrees of difficulty in the YDS class 5 range, gains an understanding of the level of difficulty involved.

To the beginner, however, these ratings are simply a set of numbers, understandably, easy if rated 5.0 and impossible if rated 5.13. To provide a slightly better understanding within the class for the beginner the following tongue-in-cheek description is provided:

**5.0 to 5.4:** There are two hand and two footholds for every move; the holds become progressively smaller as the number increases.

**5.5 to 5.6:** The two hand and two footholds are there, obvious to the experienced, but not necessarily so to the beginner.

**5.7:** The move is missing one hand or foothold.

**5.8:** The move is missing two holds of the four, or missing only one but is very strenuous.

**5.9:** The move has only one reasonable hold which may be for either a foot or a hand.

**5.1:** No hand or footholds.

**5.11 to 5.13:** Beyond the ability of most people.

Ratings are established on lead; the follower has a somewhat easier climb. The standard trained to for military climbing on 5<sup>th</sup> class terrain is between . 5.0 - 5.6.

### Ice Ratings

Ice ratings can be nebulous, because the medium constantly changes. Because of these changing conditions, every ascent could be called a first ascent. When a waterfall first freezes each season, the ice is thin and the climbing desperate. As the ice thickens, it becomes easier to climb and protect. In early morning it's probably cold and brittle, though it might turn to perfect plastic ice by mid-morning, and slush by afternoon. If it's a popular route, it'll get pock-marked so it becomes like a pegboard.

Other factors change a route from year to year, like amount of runoff, prevailing temperatures, and wind. Far more important than a rating in a guidebook is the climb's appearance, the condition of the ice, the temperature, and the climbers.

### Technical Ratings

**The ice rating system in North America has three categories:** WI for water ice, AI for alpine ice, and M for mixed.

**Ice grades currently go from 1 to 7:** These numbers apply to Water Ice (WI), Alpine Ice (AI), or Mixed (M) terrain and describe the hardest pitch on the route. The range of difficulty within each rating is broad. In general, the technical difficulty of a climb is based on the usual conditions encountered. Since the technical difficulty of a climb depends directly from the quality of the ice, be aware that conditions outside the average will affect the rating.

1. **Walking up with crampons:** No tools required.
2. **Only one tool is needed:** A pitch of 60°-70° ice, reasonably consistent, with few short steep steps. Good protection and belays.
3. **Beginner should probably use a top rope:** Sustained 70°-80° ice, usually thick and solid. May contain short, steep sections, but will have good resting places and offer good protection and belays.
4. **Approaches vertical:** Sustained 75°-85° ice, separated by good belays, or a less steep pitch with significant vertical sections. Generally good quality ice, offering satisfactory protection.
5. **Extended sections of vertical:** A noticeably more strenuous pitch of good but steep (85°-90°) ice.
6. **Steep and technical:** The ice may not be of top quality and protection may be poor. A high level of skill and strength is required, marginal protection, so as difficulty increases, so does the danger.
7. **Steep, technical, and often dangerous:** Marginal pick placements usually make this dangerous. A very steep, possibly overhanging, strenuous pitch with few resting places.

#### GRADE RATING

- I. A short climb with a short approach and easy descent. Time required is an hour, or two.
- II. A 1 or 2 pitch climb with a short approach and easy descent by rappelling, or down climbing. Time required is a few hours.
- III. A multi-pitch route at a low elevation which may take several hours, or a route with a long approach that requires good winter travel skills, or a route subject to occasional winter hazards. The descent is often by rappelling. Time required is half a day.
- IV. A multi-pitch route at higher elevations, or a remote route which requires mountaineering and winter travel skills. May be subject to objective hazards (i.e., avalanche, or rock fall). The descent may be difficult, and involve rappelling. Time required is a most of a day.
- V. A long climb on a high mountain face that requires significant competence as well as commitment. The climb is subject to objective hazards in addition to bad weather. The approach and descent may be long and difficult. Time required is a long day or two.
- VI. A long, multi-pitch route on a high alpine face. The climb may include winter alpine climbing logistical problems in addition to severe objective hazards (i.e., avalanche, falling seracs, high elevation, and remoteness). Time required is many days.